# CONTENTS

## CHAPTER 1

**Preface** 1

- Preface 1
- Audience 1
- Document Conventions 1
- Related Documentation 3
- Documentation Feedback 3
- Communications, Services, and Additional Information 3

## CHAPTER 2

**New and Changed Information** 5

- New and Changed Information 5

## CHAPTER 3

**Configuring Layer 2 Interfaces** 7

- Information About Ethernet Interfaces 7
- Interface Command 7
- Information About Unified Ports 8
  - Guidelines and Limitations for Unified Ports 8
- Unidirectional Link Detection Parameter 9
  - Default UDLD Configuration 9
    - UDLD Aggressive and Nonaggressive Modes 10
- Interface Speed 10
- Carrier Delay 10
- Information About Ethernet Interfaces 11
  - Cisco Discovery Protocol 11
    - Default CDP Configuration 11
- Error-Disabled State 11
- About Port Profiles 12
Guidelines and Limitations for Port Profiles 13
Debounce Timer Parameters 13
MTU Configuration 13
Information About Default Interfaces 14
Information About Access and Trunk Interfaces 14
   Understanding Access and Trunk Interfaces 14
   Understanding IEEE 802.1Q Encapsulation 15
   Understanding Access VLANs 16
   Understanding the Native VLAN ID for Trunk Ports 17
   Understanding Allowed VLANs 17
   Understanding Native 802.1Q VLANs 17
Configuring Access and Trunk Interfaces 18
   Configuring a LAN Interface as an Ethernet Access Port 18
   Configuring Access Host Ports 19
   Configuring Trunk Ports 20
   Configuring the Native VLAN for 802.1Q Trunking Ports 20
   Configuring the Allowed VLANs for Trunking Ports 21
   Configuring Native 802.1Q VLANs 22
Verifying the Interface Configuration 23
Configuring Ethernet Interfaces 23
   Configuring Unified Ports 23
   Configuring the UDLD Mode 25
   Disabling Link Negotiation 26
   Configuring the CDP Characteristics 27
   Enabling or Disabling CDP 28
   Enabling the Error-Disabled Detection 29
   Enabling the Error-Disabled Recovery 30
   Configuring the Error-Disabled Recovery Interval 30
Port Profiles 31
   Creating a Port Profile 31
   Modifying a Port Profile 32
   Enabling a Specific Port Profile 33
   Inheriting a Port Profile 34
   Removing an Inherited Port Profile 35
**Configuring BFD Echo Function** 81  
**Optimizing BFD on Subinterfaces** 82  
**Configuring BFD Support for Routing Protocols** 83  
  - Configuring BFD on BGP 84  
  - Configuring BFD on EIGRP 85  
  - Configuring BFD on OSPF 86  
  - Configuring BFD on HSRP 87  
  - Configuring BFD on VRRP 88  
  - Configuring BFD on Static Routes 89  
  - Configuring BFD on PIM 90  
**Disabling BFD on an Interface** 91  
**Configuring FabricPath BFD on All IS-IS Interfaces** 91  
**Configuring FabricPath BFD on a Specific Interface** 92  
**Verifying the BFD Configuration** 93  
**Monitoring BFD** 93  
**Configuration Examples for BFD** 94  
**Related Documents** 94  
**Related Standards** 94  

**CHAPTER 6**

**Configuring Port Channels** 95  
**Information About Port Channels** 95  
  - Understanding Port Channels 95  
**Compatibility Requirements** 96  
**Load Balancing Using Port Channels** 98  
**Understanding LACP** 100  
  - LACP Overview 100  
  - LACP ID Parameters 101  
  - Channel Modes 101  
  - LACP Marker Responders 102  
  - LACP-Enabled and Static Port Channel Differences 102  
  - LACP Port-Channel MinLinks and MaxBundle 103  
**Configuring Port Channels** 103  
  - Default Settings 103  
  - LACP Port-Channel Min Links 104
CHAPTER 1

Preface

This preface describes the audience, organization, and conventions of the Book Title. It also provides information on how to obtain related documentation.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- Preface, on page 1

Preface

This preface describes the audience, organization, and conventions of the Book Title. It also provides information on how to obtain related documentation.

This chapter includes the following topics:

Audience

This publication is for experienced network administrators who configure and maintain Cisco NX-OS on Cisco Nexus 5000 Series Platform switches.

Document Conventions

- As part of our constant endeavor to remodel our documents to meet our customers’ requirements, we have modified the manner in which we document configuration tasks. As a result of this, you may find a deviation in the style used to describe these tasks, with the newly included sections of the document following the new format.

- The Guidelines and Limitations section contains general guidelines and limitations that are applicable to all the features, and the feature-specific guidelines and limitations that are applicable only to the corresponding feature.

Command descriptions use the following conventions:
### Document Conventions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>bold</strong></td>
<td>Bold text indicates the commands and keywords that you enter literally as shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Italic</em></td>
<td>Italic text indicates arguments for which the user supplies the values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[x]</code></td>
<td>Square brackets enclose an optional element (keyword or argument).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`[x</td>
<td>y]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{x</td>
<td>y}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`[x {y</td>
<td>z}]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>variable</code></td>
<td>Indicates a variable for which you supply values, in context where italics cannot be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>string</code></td>
<td>A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples use the following conventions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>screen font</strong></td>
<td>Terminal sessions and information the switch displays are in screen font.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>boldface screen font</strong></td>
<td>Information you must enter is in boldface screen font.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>italic screen font</em></td>
<td>Arguments for which you supply values are in italic screen font.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt; &gt;</code></td>
<td>Nonprinting characters, such as passwords, are in angle brackets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[ ]</code></td>
<td>Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>!</code>, <code>#</code></td>
<td>An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This document uses the following conventions:

- **Note**: Means *reader take note*. Notes contain helpful suggestions or references to material not covered in the manual.

- **Caution**: Means *reader be careful*. In this situation, you might do something that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.
Related Documentation

Documentation for Cisco Nexus 6000 Series Switches is available at:

- Configuration Guides
- Command Reference Guides
- Release Notes
- Install and Upgrade Guides
- Licensing Guide

Documentation for Cisco Nexus 6000 Series Switches and Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extenders is available at:


Documentation Feedback

To provide technical feedback on this document, or to report an error or omission, please send your comments to nexus6k-doefeedback@cisco.com. We appreciate your feedback.

Communications, Services, and Additional Information

- To receive timely, relevant information from Cisco, sign up at Cisco Profile Manager.
- To get the business impact you’re looking for with the technologies that matter, visit Cisco Services.
- To submit a service request, visit Cisco Support.
- To discover and browse secure, validated enterprise-class apps, products, solutions and services, visit Cisco Marketplace.
- To obtain general networking, training, and certification titles, visit Cisco Press.
- To find warranty information for a specific product or product family, access Cisco Warranty Finder.
Cisco Bug Search Tool

Cisco Bug Search Tool (BST) is a web-based tool that acts as a gateway to the Cisco bug tracking system that maintains a comprehensive list of defects and vulnerabilities in Cisco products and software. BST provides you with detailed defect information about your products and software.
New and Changed Information

The following table provides an overview of the significant changes made to this configuration guide. The table does not provide an exhaustive list of all changes made to this guide or all new features in a particular release.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Where Documented</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unified Ports</td>
<td>6.0(2)N3(1)</td>
<td>Allows a port to be put in FC or Ethernet mode.</td>
<td>Information About Unified Ports, on page 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vPC Shutdown</td>
<td>6.0(2)N2(1)</td>
<td>Isolates a switch from the vPC complex.</td>
<td>Configuring vPC Shutdown, on page 174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Interface</td>
<td>6.0(2)N2(1)</td>
<td>Clears the configured parameters for both physical and logical interfaces.</td>
<td>Information About Default Interfaces, on page 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFD</td>
<td>6.0(2)N2(1)</td>
<td>Bidirectional Forwarding Detection support added for these protocols: BGP, EIGRP, OSPF, HSRP, VRRP, Static Routes, and PIM.</td>
<td>Configuring Bidirectional Forwarding Detection, on page 71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 3

Configuring Layer 2 Interfaces

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Information About Ethernet Interfaces, on page 7
- Carrier Delay, on page 10
- Information About Ethernet Interfaces, on page 11
- Information About Default Interfaces, on page 14
- Information About Access and Trunk Interfaces, on page 14
- Configuring Access and Trunk Interfaces, on page 18
- Verifying the Interface Configuration, on page 23
- Configuring Ethernet Interfaces, on page 23
- Configuring Slow Drain Device Detection and Congestion Avoidance, on page 42
- FCoE Slow Drain Device Detection and Congestion Avoidance, on page 48
- Displaying Interface Information, on page 51
- Default Physical Ethernet Settings, on page 53

Information About Ethernet Interfaces

The Ethernet ports can operate as standard Ethernet interfaces connected to servers or to a LAN. The Ethernet interfaces are enabled by default.

Interface Command

You can enable the various capabilities of the Ethernet interfaces on a per-interface basis using the interface command. When you enter the interface command, you specify the following information:

- Interface type—All physical Ethernet interfaces use the ethernet keyword.
- Slot number
  - Slot 1—a fixed LEM.
  - Slot 2—a fixed LEM.
  - Slot 3—a fixed LEM.
  - Slot 4—a fixed LEM.
Information About Unified Ports

Cisco Nexus unified ports allow you to configure a physical port on a Cisco Nexus device switch as a 1/10-Gigabit Ethernet, Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE), or 2-, 4-, 8-Gigabit native Fibre Channel port.

Currently, most networks have two types of switches for different types of networks. For example, LAN switches carry Ethernet traffic up to Catalyst or Nexus switches carry FC traffic from servers to MDS switches. With unified port technology, you can deploy a unified platform, unified device, and unified wire approach. Unified ports allow you to move from an existing segregated platform approach where you choose LAN and SAN port options to transition to a single, unified fabric that is transparent and consistent with existing practices and management software. A unified fabric includes the following:

- Unified platform—Uses the same hardware platform and the same software code level and certifies it once for your LAN and SAN environments.
- Unified device—Runs LAN and SAN services on the same platform switch. The unified device allows you to connect your Ethernet and Fibre Channel cables to the same device.
- Unified wire—Converges LAN and SAN networks on a single converged network adapter (CNA) and connects them to your server.

A unified fabric allows you to manage Ethernet and FCoE features independently with existing Cisco tools.

Guidelines and Limitations for Unified Ports

- On a Cisco Nexus 6000 switch, only M20UP expansion module supports native FC type. All 20 ports can be configured as native Fibre Channel ports, but the port range must either start with 1 or end at 20. If the port range does not start with 1 or end at 20, the following error is displayed:
Unidirectional Link Detection Parameter

The Cisco-proprietary Unidirectional Link Detection (UDLD) protocol allows ports that are connected through fiber optics or copper (for example, Category 5 cabling) Ethernet cables to monitor the physical configuration of the cables and detect when a unidirectional link exists. When the switch detects a unidirectional link, UDLD shuts down the affected LAN port and alerts the user. Unidirectional links can cause a variety of problems, including spanning tree topology loops.

UDLD is a Layer 2 protocol that works with the Layer 1 protocols to determine the physical status of a link. At Layer 1, autonegotiation takes care of physical signaling and fault detection. UDLD performs tasks that autonegotiation cannot perform, such as detecting the identities of neighbors and shutting down misconnected LAN ports. When you enable both autonegotiation and UDLD, Layer 1 and Layer 2 detections work together to prevent physical and logical unidirectional connections and the malfunctioning of other protocols.

A unidirectional link occurs whenever traffic transmitted by the local device over a link is received by the neighbor but traffic transmitted from the neighbor is not received by the local device. If one of the fiber strands in a pair is disconnected, and if autonegotiation is active, the link does not stay up. In this case, the logical link is undetermined, and UDLD does not take any action. If both fibers are working normally at Layer 1, then UDLD at Layer 2 determines whether those fibers are connected correctly and whether traffic is flowing bidirectionally between the correct neighbors. This check cannot be performed by autonegotiation, because autonegotiation operates at Layer 1.

A Cisco Nexus device periodically transmits UDLD frames to neighbor devices on LAN ports with UDLD enabled. If the frames are echoed back within a specific time frame and they lack a specific acknowledgment (echo), the link is flagged as unidirectional and the LAN port is shut down. Devices on both ends of the link must support UDLD in order for the protocol to successfully identify and disable unidirectional links.

The following figure shows an example of a unidirectional link condition. Device B successfully receives traffic from Device A on the port. However, Device A does not receive traffic from Device B on the same port. UDLD detects the problem and disables the port.

**Figure 1: Unidirectional Link**

![Unidirectional Link Diagram]

**Default UDLD Configuration**

The following table shows the default UDLD configuration.

**Table 1: UDLD Default Configuration**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UDLD global enable state</td>
<td>Globally disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### UDLD Aggressive and Nonaggressive Modes

UDLD aggressive mode is disabled by default. You can configure UDLD aggressive mode only on point-to-point links between network devices that support UDLD aggressive mode. If UDLD aggressive mode is enabled, when a port on a bidirectional link that has a UDLD neighbor relationship established stops receiving UDLD frames, UDLD tries to reestablish the connection with the neighbor. After eight failed retries, the port is disabled.

To prevent spanning tree loops, nonaggressive UDLD with the default interval of 15 seconds is fast enough to shut down a unidirectional link before a blocking port transitions to the forwarding state (with default spanning tree parameters).

When you enable the UDLD aggressive mode, the following occurs:

- One side of a link has a port stuck (both transmission and receive)
- One side of a link remains up while the other side of the link is down

In these cases, the UDLD aggressive mode disables one of the ports on the link, which prevents traffic from being discarded.

### Interface Speed

The Cisco Nexus 6004 switch has default port in 40 Gigabit Ethernet mode. The port speed can be changed in group of 12 Quad Small Form-factor Pluggable (QSFP) ports. You need to reset the group after the port mode is changed. The hardware support is provided for port speed of every 3 QSFP interfaces.

### Carrier Delay

You can configure the carrier delay timer only on VLAN network interfaces. The timer cannot be configured on physical Ethernet interfaces, port channels, and loopback interfaces. See “Configuring Layer 3 Interfaces,” for information about configuring VLAN network interfaces.

If a link goes down and comes back up before the carrier delay timer expires, the down state is effectively filtered, and the rest of the software on the device is not aware that a link-down event occurred. A large carrier delay timer results in fewer link-up/link-down events being detected. When you set the carrier delay time to 0, the device detects each link-up/link-down event that occurs.

In most environments, a lower carrier delay time is better than a higher one. The exact value that you choose depends on the nature of the link outages and how long you expect these linkages to last in your network. If your data links are subject to short outages (especially if those outages last less time than it takes for your IP
routing to converge), you should set a long carrier delay value to prevent these short outages from causing unnecessary problems in your routing tables. However, if your outages tend to be longer, you might want to set a shorter carrier delay time so that the outages are detected sooner, and the IP route convergence begins and ends sooner. The default carrier-delay time is 100 milliseconds.

**Information About Ethernet Interfaces**

The Ethernet ports can operate as standard Ethernet interfaces connected to servers or to a LAN. The Ethernet interfaces are enabled by default.

**Cisco Discovery Protocol**

The Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) is a device discovery protocol that runs over Layer 2 (the data link layer) on all Cisco-manufactured devices (routers, bridges, access servers, and switches) and allows network management applications to discover Cisco devices that are neighbors of already known devices. With CDP, network management applications can learn the device type and the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) agent address of neighboring devices that are running lower-layer, transparent protocols. This feature enables applications to send SNMP queries to neighboring devices.

CDP runs on all media that support Subnetwork Access Protocol (SNAP). Because CDP runs over the data-link layer only, two systems that support different network-layer protocols can learn about each other.

Each CDP-configured device sends periodic messages to a multicast address, advertising at least one address at which it can receive SNMP messages. The advertisements also contain time-to-live, or holdtime information, which is the length of time a receiving device holds CDP information before discarding it. Each device also listens to the messages sent by other devices to learn about neighboring devices.

The switch supports both CDP Version 1 and Version 2.

**Default CDP Configuration**

The following table shows the default CDP configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CDP interface state</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDP timer (packet update frequency)</td>
<td>60 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDP holdtime (before discarding)</td>
<td>180 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDP Version-2 advertisements</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Error-Disabled State**

An interface is in the error-disabled (err-disabled) state when the interface is enabled administratively (using the `no shutdown` command) but disabled at runtime by any process. For example, if UDLD detects a
unidirectional link, the interface is shut down at runtime. However, because the interface is administratively enabled, the interface status displays as err-disabled. Once an interface goes into the err-disabled state, you must manually reenable it or you can configure an automatic timeout recovery value. The err-disabled detection is enabled by default for all causes. The automatic recovery is not configured by default.

When an interface is in the err-disabled state, use the `errdisable detect cause` command to find information about the error.

You can configure the automatic err-disabled recovery timeout for a particular err-disabled cause by changing the time variable.

The `errdisable recovery cause` command provides automatic recovery after 300 seconds. To change the recovery period, use the `errdisable recovery interval` command to specify the timeout period. You can specify 30 to 65535 seconds.

If you do not enable the err-disabled recovery for the cause, the interface stays in the err-disabled state until you enter the `shutdown` and `no shutdown` commands. If the recovery is enabled for a cause, the interface is brought out of the err-disabled state and allowed to retry operation once all the causes have timed out. Use the `show interface status err-disabled` command to display the reason behind the error.

### About Port Profiles

You can create a port profile that contains many interface commands and apply that port profile to a range of interfaces on the . Port profiles can be applied to the following interface types:

- Ethernet
- VLAN network interface
- Port channel

A command that is included in a port profile can be configured outside of the port profile. If the new configuration in the port profile conflicts with the configurations that exist outside the port profile, the commands configured for an interface in configuration terminal mode have higher priority than the commands in the port profile. If changes are made to the interface configuration after a port profile is attached to it, and the configuration conflicts with that in the port profile, the configurations in the interface will be given priority.

You inherit the port profile when you attach the port profile to an interface or range of interfaces, When you attach, or inherit, a port profile to an interface or range of interfaces, the switch applies all the commands in that port profile to the interfaces.

You can have one port profile inherit the settings from another port profile. Inheriting another port profile allows the initial port profile to assume all of the commands of the second, inherited, port profile that do not conflict with the initial port profile. Four levels of inheritance are supported. The same port profile can be inherited by any number of port profiles.

To apply the port profile configurations to the interfaces, you must enable the specific port profile. You can configure and inherit a port profile onto a range of interfaces prior to enabling the port profile; you then enable that port profile for the configurations to take effect on the specified interfaces.

When you remove a port profile from a range of interfaces, the switch undoes the configuration from the interfaces first and then removes the port profile link itself. When you remove a port profile, the switch checks the interface configuration and either skips the port profile commands that have been overridden by directly entered interface commands or returns the command to the default value.
If you want to delete a port profile that has been inherited by other port profiles, you must remove the inheritance before you can delete the port profile.

You can choose a subset of interfaces from which to remove a port profile from among that group of interfaces that you originally applied the profile. For example, if you configured a port profile and configured ten interfaces to inherit that port profile, you can remove the port profile from just some of the specified ten interfaces. The port profile continues to operate on the remaining interfaces to which it is applied.

If you delete a specific configuration for a specified range of interfaces using the interface configuration mode, that configuration is also deleted from the port profile for that range of interfaces only. For example, if you have a channel group inside a port profile and you are in the interface configuration mode and you delete that port channel, the specified port channel is also deleted from the port profile as well.

After you inherit a port profile on an interface or range of interfaces and you delete a specific configuration value, that port profile configuration will not operate on the specified interfaces.

If you attempt to apply a port profile to the wrong type of interface, the switch returns an error.

When you attempt to enable, inherit, or modify a port profile, the switch creates a checkpoint. If the port profile configuration fails, the switch rolls back to the prior configuration and returns an error. A port profile is never only partially applied.

**Guidelines and Limitations for Port Profiles**

Port profiles have the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- Each port profile must have a unique name across interface types and the network.
- Commands that you enter under the interface mode take precedence over the port profile’s commands if there is a conflict. However, the port profile retains that command in the port profile.
- The port profile’s commands take precedence over the default commands on the interface, unless the default command explicitly overrides the port profile command.
- After you inherit a port profile onto an interface or range of interfaces, you can override individual configuration values by entering the new value at the interface configuration level. If you remove the individual configuration values at the interface configuration level, the interface uses the values in the port profile again.
- There are no default configurations associated with a port profile.
- A subset of commands are available under the port profile configuration mode, depending on which interface type that you specify.
- You cannot use port profiles with Session Manager.

**Debounce Timer Parameters**

**MTU Configuration**

The Cisco Nexus device switch does not fragment frames. As a result, the switch cannot have two ports in the same Layer 2 domain with different maximum transmission units (MTUs). A per-physical Ethernet interface MTU is not supported. Instead, the MTU is set according to the QoS classes. You modify the MTU by setting class and policy maps.
When you show the interface settings, a default MTU of 1500 is displayed for physical Ethernet interfaces.

**Information About Default Interfaces**

You can use the default interface feature to clear the configured parameters for both physical and logical interfaces such as the Ethernet, loopback, VLAN network, and the port-channel interface.

The default interface feature allows you to clear the existing configuration of multiple interfaces such as Ethernet, loopback, VLAN network, and port-channel interfaces. All user configuration under a specified interface will be deleted. You can optionally create a checkpoint before clearing the interface configuration so that you can later restore the deleted configuration.

**Note**
The default interfaces feature is supported for management interfaces but is not recommended because the device might be in an unreachable state.

**Information About Access and Trunk Interfaces**

**Understanding Access and Trunk Interfaces**

Ethernet interfaces can be configured either as access ports or a trunk ports, as follows:

- An access port can have only one VLAN configured on the interface; it can carry traffic for only one VLAN.
- A trunk port can have two or more VLANs configured on the interface; it can carry traffic for several VLANs simultaneously.

**Note**
Cisco NX-OS supports only IEEE 802.1Q-type VLAN trunk encapsulation.

The following figure shows how you can use trunk ports in the network. The trunk port carries traffic for two or more VLANs.
In order to correctly deliver the traffic on a trunk port with several VLANs, the device uses the IEEE 802.1Q encapsulation or tagging method.

To optimize the performance on access ports, you can configure the port as a host port. Once the port is configured as a host port, it is automatically set as an access port, and channel grouping is disabled. Use the host designation to decrease the time it takes the designated port to begin to forward packets.

Only an end station can be set as a host port; you will receive an error message if you attempt to configure other ports as hosts.

If an access port receives a packet with an 802.1Q tag in the header other than the access VLAN value, that port drops the packet without learning its MAC source address.

An Ethernet interface can function as either an access port or a trunk port; it cannot function as both port types simultaneously.

**Understanding IEEE 802.1Q Encapsulation**

A trunk is a point-to-point link between the device and another networking device. Trunks carry the traffic of multiple VLANs over a single link and allow you to extend VLANs across an entire network.

To correctly deliver the traffic on a trunk port with several VLANs, the device uses the IEEE 802.1Q encapsulation (tagging) method. This tag carries information about the specific VLAN to which the frame and packet belong. This method allows packets that are encapsulated for several different VLANs to traverse the same port and maintain traffic separation between the VLANs. The encapsulated VLAN tag also allows the trunk to move traffic end-to-end through the network on the same VLAN.
Understanding Access VLANs

When you configure a port in access mode, you can specify which VLAN will carry the traffic for that interface. If you do not configure the VLAN for a port in access mode, or an access port, the interface carries traffic for the default VLAN (VLAN1).

You can change the access port membership in a VLAN by specifying the new VLAN. You must create the VLAN before you can assign it as an access VLAN for an access port. If you change the access VLAN on an access port to a VLAN that is not yet created, the system will shut that access port down.

Note

If an access port receives a packet with an 802.1Q tag in the header other than the access VLAN value, that port drops the packet without learning its MAC source address.

Note

If you assign an access VLAN that is also a primary VLAN for a private VLAN, all access ports with that access VLAN will also receive all the broadcast traffic for the primary VLAN in the private VLAN mode.
Understanding the Native VLAN ID for Trunk Ports

A trunk port can carry untagged packets simultaneously with the 802.1Q tagged packets. When you assign a default port VLAN ID to the trunk port, all untagged traffic travels on the default port VLAN ID for the trunk port, and all untagged traffic is assumed to belong to this VLAN. This VLAN is referred to as the native VLAN ID for a trunk port. The native VLAN ID is the VLAN that carries untagged traffic on trunk ports.

The trunk port sends an egressing packet with a VLAN that is equal to the default port VLAN ID as untagged; all the other egressing packets are tagged by the trunk port. If you do not configure a native VLAN ID, the trunk port uses the default VLAN.

Note
Native VLAN ID numbers must match on both ends of the trunk.

Note
We recommend that you configure the native VLAN in the trunk allowed VLAN list.

Understanding Allowed VLANs

By default, a trunk port sends traffic to and receives traffic from all VLANs. All VLAN IDs are allowed on each trunk. However, you can remove VLANs from this inclusive list to prevent traffic from the specified VLANs from passing over the trunk. You can add any specific VLANs later that you may want the trunk to carry traffic for back to the list.

To partition the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) topology for the default VLAN, you can remove VLAN1 from the list of allowed VLANs. Otherwise, VLAN1, which is enabled on all ports by default, will have a very big STP topology, which can result in problems during STP convergence. When you remove VLAN1, all data traffic for VLAN1 on this port is blocked, but the control traffic continues to move on the port.

Understanding Native 802.1Q VLANs

To provide additional security for traffic passing through an 802.1Q trunk port, the `vlan dot1q tag native` command was introduced. This feature provides a means to ensure that all packets going out of a 802.1Q trunk port are tagged and to prevent reception of untagged packets on the 802.1Q trunk port.

Without this feature, all tagged ingress frames received on a 802.1Q trunk port are accepted as long as they fall inside the allowed VLAN list and their tags are preserved. Untagged frames are tagged with the native VLAN ID of the trunk port before further processing. Only those egress frames whose VLAN tags are inside the allowed range for that 802.1Q trunk port are received. If the VLAN tag on a frame happens to match that of the native VLAN on the trunk port, the tag is stripped off and the frame is sent untagged.

This behavior could potentially be exploited to introduce "VLAN hopping" in which a hacker could try and have a frame jump to a different VLAN. It is also possible for traffic to become part of the native VLAN by sending untagged packets into an 802.1Q trunk port.

To address the above issues, the `vlan dot1q tag native` command performs the following functions:

- On the ingress side, all untagged data traffic is dropped.
- On the egress side, all traffic is tagged. If traffic belongs to native VLAN it is tagged with the native VLAN ID.
This feature is supported on all the directly connected Ethernet and Port Channel interfaces. It is also supported on all the host interface ports of any attached Fabric Extender (FEX).

Note
You can enable the **vlan dot1q tag native** command by entering the command in the global configuration mode.

## Configuring Access and Trunk Interfaces

### Configuring a LAN Interface as an Ethernet Access Port

You can configure an Ethernet interface as an access port. An access port transmits packets on only one, untagged VLAN. You specify which VLAN traffic that the interface carries. If you do not specify a VLAN for an access port, the interface carries traffic only on the default VLAN. The default VLAN is VLAN1.

The VLAN must exist before you can specify that VLAN as an access VLAN. The system shuts down an access port that is assigned to an access VLAN that does not exist.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# interface {{type slot/port}</td>
<td>{port-channel number}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>If this is a 10G breakout port, the <em>slot/port</em> syntax is <em>QSFP-module/port</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>switch(config-if)# switchport mode {access</td>
<td>trunk}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>switch(config-if)# switchport access vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Specifies the VLAN for which this access port will carry traffic. If you do not enter this command, the access port carries traffic on VLAN1 only; use this command to change the VLAN for which the access port carries traffic.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example
This example shows how to set an interface as an Ethernet access port that carries traffic for a specific VLAN only:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/10
switch(config-if)# switchport mode access
switch(config-if)# switchport access vlan 5
```

Configuring Access Host Ports

By using a switchport host, you can make an access port a spanning-tree edge port, and enable BPDU Filtering and BPDU Guard at the same time.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you are configuring the correct interface; it must be an interface that is connected to an end station.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# interface type slot/port</td>
<td>Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config-if)# switchport host</td>
<td>Sets the interface to spanning-tree port type edge, turns on BPDU Filtering and BPDU Guard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Apply this command only to switchports that connect to hosts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example
This example shows how to set an interface as an Ethernet access host port with EtherChannel disabled:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/10
switch(config-if)# switchport host
```
Configuring Trunk Ports

You can configure an Ethernet port as a trunk port; a trunk port transmits untagged packets for the native VLAN plus encapsulated, tagged, packets for multiple VLANs.

Cisco NX-OS supports only 802.1Q encapsulation.

Note

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Switch(config)# interface {type slot/port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>Switch(config-if)# switchport mode {access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sets the interface as an Ethernet trunk port. A trunk port can carry traffic in one or more VLANs on the same physical link (VLANs are based on the trunk-allowed VLANs list). By default, a trunk interface can carry traffic for all VLANs. To specify that only certain VLANs are allowed on the specified trunk, use the switchport trunk allowed vlan command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to set an interface as an Ethernet trunk port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/3
switch(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
```

Configuring the Native VLAN for 802.1Q Trunking Ports

If you do not configure this parameter, the trunk port uses the default VLAN as the native VLAN ID.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Switch(config)# interface {type slot/port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring the Native VLAN for Trunking Ports

If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is **QSFP-module/port**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switch(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Sets the native VLAN for the 802.1Q trunk. Valid values are from 1 to 4094, except those VLANs reserved for internal use. The default value is VLAN1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to set the native VLAN for an Ethernet trunk port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/3
switch(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan 5
```

### Configuring the Allowed VLANs for Trunking Ports

You can specify the IDs for the VLANs that are allowed on the specific trunk port.

Before you configure the allowed VLANs for the specified trunk ports, ensure that you are configuring the correct interfaces and that the interfaces are trunks.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switch(config)# interface {type slot/port</td>
<td>port-channel number}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Note

If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is **QSFP-module/port**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switch(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan {vlan-list all</td>
<td>none [add</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You cannot add internally allocated VLANs as allowed VLANs on trunk ports. The system returns a message if you attempt to list an internally allocated VLAN as an allowed VLAN.

Example
This example shows how to add VLANs to the list of allowed VLANs on an Ethernet trunk port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/3
switch(config-if)# switchport trunk allow vlan 15-20
```

### Configuring Native 802.1Q VLANs

Typically, you configure 802.1Q trunks with a native VLAN ID, which strips tagging from all packets on that VLAN. This configuration allows all untagged traffic and control traffic to transit the Cisco Nexus device. Packets that enter the switch with 802.1Q tags that match the native VLAN ID value are similarly stripped of tagging.

To maintain the tagging on the native VLAN and drop untagged traffic, enter the `vlan dot1q tag native` command. The switch will tag the traffic received on the native VLAN and admit only 802.1Q-tagged frames, dropping any untagged traffic, including untagged traffic in the native VLAN.

Control traffic continues to be accepted untagged on the native VLAN on a trunked port, even when the `vlan dot1q tag native` command is enabled.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# <code>vlan dot1q tag native [tx-only]</code></td>
<td>Enables dot1q (IEEE 802.1Q) tagging for all native VLANs on all trunked ports on the Cisco Nexus device. By default, this feature is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config)# <code>no vlan dot1q tag native [tx-only]</code></td>
<td>Disables dot1q (IEEE 802.1Q) tagging for all native VLANs on all trunked ports on the switch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Verifying the Interface Configuration

Use the following commands to display access and trunk interface configuration information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch# show interface</td>
<td>Displays the interface configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show interface switchport</td>
<td>Displays information for all Ethernet interfaces, including access and trunk interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show interface brief</td>
<td>Displays interface configuration information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring Ethernet Interfaces

The section includes the following topics:

Configuring Unified Ports

Before you begin

Confirm that you have a supported Cisco Nexus switch. Unified Ports are available on the following Cisco Nexus switches:

- Cisco Nexus 6004 Unified 20 x 10GE Eth/FCoE or 8/4/2Gbps Fibre Channel
- Cisco Nexus 6004 with M6004X-20UP LEMs

If you're configuring a unified port as Fibre Channel or FCoE, confirm that you have enabled the feature fcoe command.
### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>switch# configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>switch(config) # slot slot number</code></td>
<td>Identifies the slot on the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>`switch(config-slot) # port port number type {ethernet</td>
<td>fc}`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>type</strong>—Specifies the type of port to configure on a slot in a chassis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>ethernet</strong>—Specifies an Ethernet port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>fc</strong>—Specifies a Fibre Channel (FC) port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Changing unified ports on an expansion module (GEM) requires that you power cycle the GEM card. You do not have to reboot the entire switch for changes to take effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• When you configure unified ports as Fibre Channel, the existing configuration for Fibre Channel interfaces and VSAN memberships are unaffected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><code>switch(config-slot) # copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><code>switch(config-slot) # reload</code></td>
<td>Reboots the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td><code>switch(config) # slot slot number</code></td>
<td>Identifies the slot on the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td><code>switch(config-slot) # no port port number type fc</code></td>
<td>Removes the unified port.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

Individual ports cannot be converted to FC ports. In N5672UP-16G, only Slot 2 has UP ports.

The following example shows how to configure slot 1, 10 ports as FC ports on a Cisco N6004X–M20UP module:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# slot 1
switch(config-slot)# port 1-10 type fc
```
**Configuring the UDLD Mode**

You can configure normal or aggressive unidirectional link detection (UDLD) modes for Ethernet interfaces on devices configured to run UDLD. Before you can enable a UDLD mode for an interface, you must make sure that UDLD is already enabled on the device that includes the interface. UDLD must also be enabled on the other linked interface and its device.

To use the normal UDLD mode, you must configure one of the ports for normal mode and configure the other port for the normal or aggressive mode. To use the aggressive UDLD mode, you must configure both ports for the aggressive mode.

Before you begin, UDLD must be enabled for the other linked port and its device.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# feature udld</td>
<td>Enables UDLD for the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config)# no feature udld</td>
<td>Disables UDLD for the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>switch(config)# show udld global</td>
<td>Displays the UDLD status for the device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Step 5 | switch(config)# interface type slot/port | Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode. | **Note** If this is a 10G breakout port, the *slot/port* syntax is *QSFP-module/port*.
| Step 6 | switch(config-if)# udld {enable | disable | aggressive} | Enables the normal UDLD mode, disables UDLD, or enables the aggressive UDLD mode. |
| Step 7 | switch(config-if)# show udld interface | Displays the UDLD status for the interface. |

### Example

This example shows how to enable UDLD for the switch:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature udld
```

This example shows how to enable the normal UDLD mode for an Ethernet port:
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# udld enable

This example shows how to enable the aggressive UDLD mode for an Ethernet port:

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# udld aggressive

This example shows how to disable UDLD for an Ethernet port:

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# udld disable

This example shows how to disable UDLD for the switch:

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no feature udld

Disabling Link Negotiation

You can disable link negotiation using the `no negotiate auto` command. By default, auto-negotiation is enabled on 1-Gigabit ports and disabled on 10-Gigabit ports and 40-Gigabit ports.

This command is equivalent to the Cisco IOS `speed non-negotiate` command.

---

**Note**

The auto-negotiation configuration is not applicable on 10-Gigabit or 40-Gigabit Ethernet ports. When auto-negotiation is configured on a 10-Gigabit port or 40-Gigabit port, the following error message is displayed:

ERROR: Ethernet1/40: Configuration does not match the port capability

---

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# interface ethernet slot/port</td>
<td>Selects the interface and enters interface mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If this is a 10G breakout port, the <code>slot/port</code> syntax is <code>QSFP-module/port</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# no negotiate auto</td>
<td>Disables link negotiation on the selected Ethernet interface (1-Gigabit port).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Layer 2 Interfaces

#### Configuring the CDP Characteristics

You can configure the frequency of Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) updates, the amount of time to hold the information before discarding it, and whether or not to send Version-2 advertisements.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config)# [no] cdp advertise {v1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config)# [no] cdp format device-id {mac-address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config)# [no] cdp holdtime seconds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enabling or Disabling CDP

You can enable or disable CDP for Ethernet interfaces. This protocol works only when you have it enabled on both interfaces on the same link.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)# interface type slot/port</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode for the specified interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If this is a 10G breakout port, the <code>slot/port</code> syntax is <code>QSFP-module/port</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config-if)# cdp enable</td>
<td>Enables CDP for the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To work correctly, this parameter must be enabled for both interfaces on the same link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config-if)# no cdp enable</td>
<td>Disables CDP for the interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to enable CDP for an Ethernet port:

```bash
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# cdp enable
```
This command can only be applied to a physical Ethernet interface.

### Enabling the Error-Disabled Detection

You can enable error-disable (err-disabled) detection in an application. As a result, when a cause is detected on an interface, the interface is placed in an err-disabled state, which is an operational state that is similar to the link-down state.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# errdisable detect cause {all</td>
<td>link-flap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config)# shutdown</td>
<td>Brings the interface down administratively. To manually recover the interface from the err-disabled state, enter this command first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switch(config)# no shutdown</td>
<td>Brings the interface up administratively and enables the interface to recover manually from the err-disabled state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switch(config)# show interface status err-disabled</td>
<td>Displays information about err-disabled interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> (Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Example

This example shows how to enable the err-disabled detection in all cases:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# errdisable detect cause all
switch(config)# shutdown
switch(config)# no shutdown
switch(config)# show interface status err-disabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```
Enabling the Error-Disabled Recovery

You can specify the application to bring the interface out of the error-disabled (err-disabled) state and retry coming up. It retries after 300 seconds, unless you configure the recovery timer (see the errdisable recovery interval command).

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 switch(config)# errdisable recovery cause {all</td>
<td>udl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 switch(config)# show interface status err-disabled</td>
<td>Displays information about err-disabled interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 (Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to enable err-disabled recovery under all conditions:

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# errdisable recovery cause all
switch(config)# show interface status err-disabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config

Configuring the Error-Disabled Recovery Interval

You can use this procedure to configure the err-disabled recovery timer value. The range is from 30 to 65535 seconds. The default is 300 seconds.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 switch(config)# errdisable recovery interval interval</td>
<td>Specifies the interval for the interface to recover from the err-disabled state. The range is from 30 to 65535 seconds. The default is 300 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 switch(config)# show interface status err-disabled</td>
<td>Displays information about err-disabled interfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Layer 2 Interfaces

#### Port Profiles

**Creating a Port Profile**

You can create a port profile on the switch. Each port profile must have a unique name across interface types and the network.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.switch# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> port-profile [type {ethernet</td>
<td>interface-vlan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)# port-profile type ethernet test</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config-port-prof)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits port profile configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config-port-prof)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> (Optional) show port-profile</td>
<td>Displays the port profile configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)# show port-profile name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> (Optional) copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to enable err-disabled recovery under all conditions:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# errdisable recovery interval 32
switch(config)# show interface status err-disabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

---

**Purpose**

Command or Action

| Step 4 | (Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config | Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration. |
Modifying a Port Profile

You can modify a port profile in port-profile configuration mode.

You can remove commands from a port profile using the no form of the command. When you remove a command from the port profile, the corresponding command is removed from the interface that is attached to the port profile.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| switch# configure terminal  
switch(config)# |         |
| **Step 2**         |         |
| `port-profile [type {ethernet | interface-vlan  
| | port channel}] name` | Enters the port profile configuration mode for the specified port profile and allows you to add or remove configurations to the profile. |
| **Example:**       |         |
| switch(config)# port-profile type ethernet test  
switch(config-port-prof)# |         |
| **Step 3**         |         |
| `exit`             | Exits the port profile configuration mode. |
| **Example:**       |         |
| switch(config-port-prof)# exit  
switch(config)# |         |
### Enabling a Specific Port Profile

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> port-profile [type {ethernet</td>
<td>interface-vlan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> switch(config)# port-profile type ethernet test switch(config-port-prof)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> state enabled name</td>
<td>Enables the port profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong> switch(config-port-prof)# state enabled switch(config-port-prof)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> exit</td>
<td>Exits the port profile configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Inheriting a Port Profile

You can inherit a port profile onto an existing port profile. The switch supports four levels of inheritance.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>配置模式</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switch(config)#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>配置端口配置模式</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port-profile name</td>
<td>Enters port profile configuration mode for the specified port profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>switch(config)# port-profile test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switch(config-port-prof)#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>继承端口配置</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inherit port-profile name</td>
<td>Inherits another port profile onto the existing one. The original port profile assumes all the configurations of the inherited port profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>switch(config-port-prof)# inherit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>port-profile adam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switch(config-port-prof)#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>退出</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td>Exits the port profile configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>switch(config-port-prof)# exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switch(config)#</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) show port-profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Displays the port profile configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)# show port-profile name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) copy running-config startup-config</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to inherit the port profile named adam onto the port profile named test:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# port-profile test
switch(config-ppm)# inherit port-profile adam
switch(config-ppm)#
```

This example shows how to add the interface commands to a port profile named ppEth configured for Ethernet interfaces:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# port-profile ppEth
switch(config-port-prof)# switchport mode trunk
switch(config-port-prof)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 300-400
switch(config-port-prof)# flowcontrol receive on
switch(config-port-prof)# speed 10000
switch(config-port-prof)#
```

This example shows how to inherit a port profile named ppEth configured for Ethernet interfaces into an existing port profile named test:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# port-profile test
switch(config-port-prof)# inherit port-profile ppEth
switch(config-port-prof)#
```

### Removing an Inherited Port Profile

You can remove an inherited port profile.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Enters configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>port-profile name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Enters port profile configuration mode for the specified port profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config-ppm)#</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Configuring Layer 2 Interfaces

### Assigning a Port Profile to a Range of Interfaces

You can assign a port profile to an interface or to a range of interfaces. All of the interfaces must be the same type.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>interface [ethernet slot/port</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Note

If this is a 10G breakout port, the `slot/port` syntax is `QSFP-module/port`.

---

### Example

This example shows how to remove the inherited port profile named adam from the port profile named test:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# port-profile test
switch(config-ppm)# no inherit port-profile adam
switch(config-ppm)#
```

---

### Assigning a Port Profile to a Range of Interfaces

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>no inherit port-profile name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) show port-profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) copy running-config startup-config</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Example

This example shows how to remove an inherited port profile from this port profile.

```
switch(config)# port-profile test
switch(config-port-prof)# no inherit port-profile adam
switch(config-port-prof)#
```

Exits the port profile configuration mode.

```
switch(config-port-prof)# exit
switch(config)#
```

Displays the port profile configuration.

```
switch(config)# show port-profile
```

Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

```
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>assigns the specified port profile to the selected interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inherit port-profile name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>exits port profile configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>displays the port profile configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) show port-profile name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to assign the port profile named adam to Ethernet interfaces 2/3 to 2/5, 3/2, and 1/20 to 1/25:

```bash
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/3 to 2/5, 3/2, and 1/20 to 1/25
switch(config-if)# inherit port-profile adam
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# show port-profile adam
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

### Removing a Port Profile from a Range of Interfaces

You can remove a port profile from some or all of the interfaces to which you have applied the profile.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>selects the range of interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface [ethernet slot/port</td>
<td>interface-vlan vlan-id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command or Action | Purpose |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>removes the specified port profile from the selected interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no inherit port-profile name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>exits port profile configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>displays the port profile configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) show port-profile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example

This example shows how to remove the port profile named adam from Ethernet interfaces 1/3-5:

```bash
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/3-5
switch(config-if)# no inherit port-profile adam
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# show port-profile
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Configuration Examples for Port Profiles

The following example shows how to configure a port profile, inherit the port profile on an Ethernet interface, and enabling the port profile.

```bash
switch(config)#
switch(config)# show running-config interface Ethernet1/14

!Command: show running-config interface Ethernet1/14
!Time: Thu Aug 26 07:01:32 2010

version 5.0(2)N1(1)

interface Ethernet1/14

switch(config)# port-profile type ethernet alpha
switch(config-port-prof)# switchport mode trunk
switch(config-port-prof)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 10-15
switch(config-port-prof)#

switch(config-port-prof)# show running-config port-profile alpha

!Command: show running-config port-profile alpha
!Time: Thu Aug 26 07:02:29 2010

version 5.0(2)N1(1)
port-profile type ethernet alpha
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk allowed vlan 10-15

switch(config-port-prof)# int eth 1/14
switch(config-if)# inherit port-profile alpha
switch(config-if)#
switch(config-if)# port-profile type ethernet alpha
switch(config-port-prof)# state enabled
switch(config-port-prof)#

switch(config-port-prof)# sh running-config interface ethernet 1/14

!Command: show running-config interface Ethernet1/14
!Time: Thu Aug 26 07:03:17 2010

version 5.0(2)N1(1)

interface Ethernet1/14

inherit port-profile alpha

switch(config-port-prof)# sh running-config interface ethernet 1/14 expand-port-profile

!Command: show running-config interface Ethernet1/14 expand-port-profile
!Time: Thu Aug 26 07:03:21 2010
version 5.0(2)N1(1)

interface Ethernet1/14
    switchport mode trunk
    switchport trunk allowed vlan 10-15

switch(config-port-prof)#

Configuring a Default Interface

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Step 2| switch(config)# default interface int-if [checkpoint name] | Deletes the configuration of the interface and restores the default configuration. The value of int-if can be one of the following:
    |                                                         | • ethernet
    |                                                         | • loopback
    |                                                         | • mgmt
    |                                                         | • port-channel
    |                                                         | • vlan
    |                                                         | Use the checkpoint keyword to store a copy of the running configuration of the interface before clearing the configuration. |
| Step 3| exit                                                   | Exits the configuration mode.                                           |
| Step 4| (Optional) show interface                             | Displays the interface status and information.                          |

Example

This example shows how to delete the configuration of an Ethernet interface while saving a checkpoint of the running configuration for rollback purposes:

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# show running-config interface e1/10
!Command: show running-config interface Ethernet1/10
!Time: Tue Jul 2 10:23:50 2013

version 6.0(2)N2(1)

interface Ethernet1/10
switchport mode trunk
channel-group 1

default interface ethernet 3/1 checkpoint chk1
........Done
### Configuring Default Interface Mode

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# system default switchport</td>
<td>Sets default interface mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[shutdown]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** When the `system default switchport shutdown` command is issued, any switchports (including FEX HIFs) that are not configured with `no shutdown` command are shut down. To avoid the shutdown, configure the switchports with `no shutdown` command.

#### Example

This example shows how to set the default interface mode:

```plaintext
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# system default switchport
```

### Configuring the Description Parameter

You can provide textual interface descriptions for the Ethernet ports.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# interface type slot/port</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode for the specified interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** If this is a 10G breakout port, the `slot/port` syntax is `QSFP-module/port`. 
Configuring Layer 2 Interfaces

Disabling and Restarting Ethernet Interfaces

Purpose

Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
Step 3 | switch(config-if)# description test

Specifies the description for the interface.

Example

This example shows how to set the interface description to Server 3 interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/3
switch(config-if)# description Server 3 Interface
```

Disabling and Restarting Ethernet Interfaces

You can shut down and restart an Ethernet interface. This action disables all of the interface functions and marks the interface as being down on all monitoring displays. This information is communicated to other network servers through all dynamic routing protocols. When shut down, the interface is not included in any routing updates.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# interface type slot/port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode for the specified interface.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# shutdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disables the interface.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# no shutdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restarts the interface.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to disable an Ethernet port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# shutdown
```

This example shows how to restart an Ethernet interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# no shutdown
```
Configuring Slow Drain Device Detection and Congestion Avoidance

Fibre Channel Slow Drain Device Detection and Congestion Avoidance- An Overview

All data traffic between end devices in the SAN fabric is carried by Fibre Channel Class 3, and in some cases, Class 2 services, that use link-level, per-hop-based, and buffer-to-buffer flow control. These classes of service do not support end-to-end flow control. When slow devices are attached to the fabric, the end devices do not accept the frames at the configured or negotiated rate. The slow devices lead to an Inter-Switch Link (ISL) credit shortage in the traffic that is destined for these devices and they congest the links. The credit shortage affects the unrelated flows in the fabric that use the same ISL link even though destination devices do not experience a slow drain.

This feature provides various enhancements that enable you to detect slow drain devices are cause congestion in the network and also provide congestion avoidance.

The enhancements are mainly on the edge ports that connect to the slow drain devices to minimize the frames stuck condition in the edge ports due to slow drain devices that are causing an ISL blockage. To avoid or minimize the stuck condition, configure lesser frame timeout for the ports. You can use the no-credit timeout to drop all packets after the slow drain is detected using the configured thresholds. A smaller frame timeout value helps to alleviate the slow drain condition that affects the fabric by dropping the packets on the edge ports sooner than the time they actually get timed out (358 ms). This function frees the buffer space in ISL, which can be used by other unrelated flows that do not experience slow drain condition.

This feature supports edge ports that are connected to slow edge devices. Even though you can apply this feature to ISLs as well, we recommend that you apply this feature only for edge F ports and retain the default configuration for ISLs as E and TE ports. This feature is not supported on Generation 1 modules.

Configuring a Stuck Frame Timeout Value

The default stuck frame timeout value is 358 ms. The timeout value can be incremented in steps of 10. We recommend that you retain the default configuration for ISLs and configure a value that does not exceed 500 ms (100 to 200 ms) for fabric F ports.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# system timeout congestion-drop seconds mode E</td>
<td>Specifies the stuck frame timeout value in milliseconds and the port mode for the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config)# system timeout congestion-drop default mode E</td>
<td>Specifies the default stuck frame timeout port mode for the switch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example
This example shows how to configure a stuck frame timeout value of 100 ms:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# system timeout congestion-drop 100 mode F
switch(config)# system timeout congestion-drop default mode F
```

Configuring a No-Credit Timeout Value

When the port does not have the credits for the configured period, you can enable a no-credit timeout on that port, which results in all frames that come to that port getting dropped in the egress. This action frees the buffer space in the ISL link, which helps to reduce the fabric slowdown and congestion on other unrelated flows that use the same link.

The dropped frames are the frames that have just entered the switch or have stayed in the switch for the configured timeout value. These drops are preemptive and clear the congestion completely.

The no-credit timeout feature is disabled by default. We recommend that you retain the default configuration for ISLs and configure a value that does not exceed 358 ms (200 to 300 ms) for fabric F ports.

You can disable this feature by entering the `no system timeout no-credit-drop mode F` command.

---

Note

The no-credit timeout value and stuck frame timeout value are interlinked. The no-credit timeout value must always be greater than the stuck frame timeout value.

---

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# system timeout no-credit-drop seconds mode F</td>
<td>Specifies the no-credit timeout value and port mode for the switch. The <code>seconds</code> value is 500ms by default. This value can be incremented in steps of 100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config)# system timeout no-credit-drop default mode F</td>
<td>Specifies the default no-credit timeout value port mode for the switch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Example

This example shows how to configure a no-credit timeout value:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# system timeout no-credit-drop 100 mode F
switch(config)# system timeout no-credit-drop default mode F
```
Displaying Credit Loss Counters

Use the following commands to display the credit loss counters per module per interface for the last specified minutes, hours, and days:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> show process creditmon {credit-loss-event-history</td>
<td>credit-loss-events</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Displaying Credit Loss Events

Use one of the following commands to display the total number of credit loss events per interface with the latest three credit loss time stamps:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show process creditmon credit-loss-events [module module number]</td>
<td>Displays the credit loss event information for a module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show process creditmon credit-loss-event-history [module module number]</td>
<td>Displays the credit loss event history information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Displaying Timeout Drops

Use the following command to display the timeout drops per module per interface for the last specified minutes, hours, and days:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show logging onboard flow-control timeout-drops [last mm minutes] [last hh hours] [last dd days] [module module number]</td>
<td>Displays the Onboard Failure Logging (OBFL) timeout drops log.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Displaying the Average Credit Not Available Status

When the average credit nonavailable duration exceeds the set threshold, you can error-disable the port, send a trap with interface details, and generate a syslog with interface details. In addition, you can combine or more actions or turn on or off an action. The port monitor feature provides the command line interface to configure the thresholds and action. The threshold configuration can be a percentage of credit non-available duration in an interval.

The thresholds for the credit nonavailable duration can be 0 percent to 100 percent in multiples of 10, and the interval can be from 1 second to 1 hour. The default is 10 percent in 1 second and generates a syslog.

Use the following command to display the average credit-not-available status:
Port Monitoring

You can use port monitoring to monitor the performance of fabric devices and to detect slow drain devices. You can monitor counters and take the necessary action depending on whether the portguard is enabled or disabled. You can configure the thresholds for various counters and trigger an event when the values cross the threshold settings. Port monitoring provides a user interface that you can use to configure the thresholds and action. By default, portguard is disabled in the port monitoring policy.

Two default policies, default and default slowdrain, are created during snmpd initialization. The default slowdrain policy is activated when the switch comes online when no other policies are active at that time. The default slowdrain policy monitors only credit-loss-reco and tx-credit-not-available counters.

When you create a policy, it is created for both access and trunk links. The access link has a value of F and the trunk link has a value of E.

Enabling Port Monitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>switch# configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>switch(config)# [no] port-monitor enable</code></td>
<td>Enables (default) the port monitoring feature. The no version of this command disables the port monitoring feature.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring a Port Monitor Policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>switch# configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>switch(config)# port-monitor name policymame</code></td>
<td>Specifies the policy name and enters the port monitor policy configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>switch(config-port-monitor)# port-type all</code></td>
<td>Applies the policy to all ports.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `switch(config-port-monitor)# counter {credit-loss-reco | timeout-discards | tx-credit-not-available} poll-interval seconds {absolute | delta} rising-threshold value1 event event-id1 falling-threshold value2 event event-id2` | Specifies the poll interval in seconds, the thresholds in absolute numbers, and the event IDs of events to be triggered for the following reasons:  
  - credit-loss-reco—Credit loss recovery  
  - timeout-discards—Timeout discards |
### Activating a Port Monitor Policy

**Purpose**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• tx-credit-not-available—Average credit non-available duration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 5**

```plaintext
switch(config-port-monitor)# [no] counter 
{credit-loss-reco | timeout-discards | tx-credit-not-available} poll-interval seconds 
{absolute | delta} rising-threshold value1 event event-id1 falling-threshold value2 event event-id2
```

Turns on monitoring for the specified counter. The `no` form of this command turns off monitoring for the specified counter.

### Example

This example shows how to specify the poll interval and threshold for timeout discards:

```plaintext
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# port-monitor cisco
switch(config)# port-monitor counter timeout-discards poll-interval 10
```

This example show how to specify the poll interval and threshold for credit loss recovery:

```plaintext
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# port-monitor cisco
switch(config)# port-monitor counter credit-loss-reco poll-interval 20 delta rising-threshold 10 event 4 falling-threshold 3 event 4
```

### Activating a Port Monitor Policy

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Step 1

```plaintext
switch# configure terminal
```

Enters global configuration mode.

| Step 2

```plaintext
switch(config)# port-monitor activate policymame
```

Activates the specified port monitor policy.

| Step 3

```plaintext
(Optional) switch(config)# port-monitor activate
```

Activates the default port monitor policy.

| Step 4

```plaintext
(Optional) switch(config)# no port-monitor activate policymame
```

Deactivates the specified port monitor policy.

### Example

This example shows how to activate a specific port monitor policy:

```plaintext
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# port-monitor activate cisco
```
Displaying Port Monitor Policies

Use the following command to display port monitor policies:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch# show port-monitor policyname</td>
<td>Displays details of the specified port monitor policy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to display a specific port monitor policy:

```
switch# show port-monitor cisco
```

Policy Name : cisco
Admin status : Active
Oper status : Active
Port type : All Ports

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Counter</th>
<th>In Use</th>
<th>Threshold</th>
<th>Interval</th>
<th>Rising</th>
<th>Threshold event</th>
<th>Falling</th>
<th>Threshold event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Link Loss</td>
<td>Not enabled</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sync Loss</td>
<td>Not enabled</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocol Error</td>
<td>Not enabled</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal Loss</td>
<td>Not enabled</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invalid Words</td>
<td>Not enabled</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invalid CRC's</td>
<td>Not enabled</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RX Performance</td>
<td>Not enabled</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>2147483648</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>524288000</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX Performance</td>
<td>Not enabled</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>2147483648</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>524288000</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX Discards</td>
<td>Not enabled</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LR RX</td>
<td>Not enabled</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LR TX</td>
<td>Not enabled</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FCoE Slow Drain Device Detection and Congestion Avoidance

The data traffic between end devices in Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) uses link level, per-hop Priority Flow Control (PFC). This allows the FCoE class on a link to be paused independently in each direction, while other classes continue to transmit and receive on the link. When end devices transmit PFC pause frames to the switch port they prevent the switch port from being able to transmit FCoE frames to the end device. Although some of this occurs normally, if it occurs in large amounts it can cause congestion in the fabric. End devices doing this are called a slow devices, or slow drain devices. When this occurs it can cause frames to queue at the switch which results in the switch transmitting its own PFC pause frames back towards the source of the incoming frames. If the switch port where the frames are being received (the source of the incoming frames) is connected to an end device, then this end device will temporarily be paused. It will not be able to transmit any frames into the switch for any destination (not just for the slow device). If switch port where the frames are being received on is an Inter-Switch-Link (ISL) then all inbound traffic across that ISL will be paused. This will affect all devices transiting that ISL.

There are two ways to mitigate FCoE slowdrain on a Cisco Nexus 5500 switch:

- Congestion timeout, on page 48
- Pause timeout, on page 48

**Congestion timeout**

Congestion timeout measures the age of frames that have been received by the switch. It automatically drops the FCoE frames that have been received by the switch, but are not able to transmit for 358 milliseconds. You cannot modify the congestion timeout value for FCoE.

**Pause timeout**

Pause timeout automatically drops all the FCoE frames that have been received by the switch and queued for an egress port when the egress port is in a continual paused state for the associated time. By default this feature is off, but it can be configured to be 90 milliseconds, 180 milliseconds, 358 milliseconds, 716 milliseconds, or 1433 milliseconds. The lower the value the quicker the switch will react to a port in a continual state of a pause. When a port reaches the pause timeout threshold, all the FCoE frames queued for egress on that port are emptied from the queue regardless of their exact age. The threshold is detected by a software process that runs every 100 milliseconds. Since all the frames queued to a given egress port are dropped this can have a dramatic effect on reducing the congestion on affected ISLs (ISLs from which the frames originated). When this condition is detected it is called a "Pause Event". The switch issues the following message when a pause event is detected:

```
switchname %$ VDC-1 %$ %CARMELUSD-2-CARMEL_SYSLOG_CRIT: FCoE Pause Event Occurred on interface ethernet 1/1
```
For every pause event that lasts for the specified timeout value, a pause event is published to the Embedded Event Manager (EEM). The EEM maintains the count of pause events per port and triggers the policy action when the threshold is reached.

The following are the two EEM policies that exist by default. Use the `show event manager system-policy` command to view the EEM policies.

- `switch# show event manager system-policy`
  
  **Name**: __ethpm_slow_drain_core  
  **Description**: 10 Pause Events in 1 minute. Action: None by default  
  **Overridable**: Yes

- `switch# show event manager system-policy`
  
  **Name**: __ethpm_slow_drain_edge  
  **Description**: 5 Pause Events in 1 minute. Action: None by default  
  **Overridable**: Yes

You can override the default policy with the new thresholds and actions. If you try to override the EEM system policies _ethpm_slow_drain_edge and _ethpm_slow_drain_core, the default-action, default syslog, will also appear. We recommend that you specify action err-disable to isolate the faulty port where this condition occurs. This can be done by overriding the _ethpm_slow_drain_edge EEM policy.

The following is a sample output to override the EEM system policy:

```
event manager applet custom_edge_policy override __ethpm_slow_drain_edge
event policy-default count 5 time 360
action 1.0 syslog msg FCoE Slowdrain Policy Was Hit
exit
```

In the above example, the EEM policy generates a syslog if five pause events occur in 360 seconds on an edge port.

### Configuring a Pause Frame Timeout Value

You can enable or disable a pause frame timeout value on a port. The system periodically checks the ports for a pause condition and enables a pause frame timeout on a port if it is in a continuous pause condition for a configured period of time. This situation results in all frames that come to that port getting dropped in the egress. This function empties the buffer space in the ISL link and helps to reduce the fabric slowdown and the congestion on the other unrelated flows using the same link.

When a pause condition is cleared on a port or when a port flaps, the system disables the pause frame timeout on that particular port.

The pause frame timeout is disabled by default. We recommend that you retain the default configuration for the ISLs and configure a value that does not exceed the default value for the edge ports.

For a faster recovery from the slow drain device behavior, you should configure a pause frame timeout value because it drops all the frames in the edge port that face the slow drain whether the frame is in the switch for a congested timeout or not. This process instantly clears the congestion in the ISL. You should configure a pause frame timeout value to clear the congestion completely instead of configuring a congestion frame timeout value.

Use the `no system default interface pause timeout milliseconds mode {core | edge}` command to disable the pause frame timeout value on the edge ports. The default pause timeout value is 358 milliseconds.
# Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch# system default interface pause timeout milliseconds mode core</td>
<td>Configures a new pause frame timeout value in milliseconds and the port mode for the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch# system default interface pause mode {core</td>
<td>edge}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switch# no system default interface pause timeout milliseconds mode core</td>
<td>Disables the pause frame timeout for the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switch# no system default interface pause mode {core</td>
<td>edge}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> (Optional) switch# show logging onboard flow-control pause-event</td>
<td>Displays the total number of the pause events per module per interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> (Optional) switch# show logging onboard flow-control timeout-drop</td>
<td>Displays the timeout drops per module per interface with the time-stamp information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Example

This example shows how to configure a pause frame timeout value:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# system default interface pause timeout 358 mode core
switch(config)# system default interface pause mode edge
switch(config)# no system default interface pause timeout 358 mode core
switch(config)# no system default interface pause mode edge
switch(config)# end
switch# show logging onboard flow-control pause-event
switch# show logging onboard flow-control timeout-drop
```

This example shows how to display the total number of the pause events for the entire switch:

```
switch# show logging onboard flow-control pause-events
List of Pause Events
----------------------------------------------------
Ethernet    Timestamp
Interface
----------------------------------------------------
1/1          01/01/2009 10:15:20.262951
1/1          01/01/2009 10:15:21.462869
1/1          01/01/2009 10:15:22.173349
1/1          01/01/2009 10:15:22.902929
1/1          01/01/2009 10:15:23.642984
1/1          01/01/2009 10:15:24.382961
1/1          01/01/2009 10:15:25.100497
1/1          01/01/2009 10:15:25.842915
```

This example shows how to display the timeout drops per interface with time-stamp information for the supervisor CLI:

```
switch# show logging onboard flow-control timeout-drop
```
Displaying Interface Information

To view configuration information about the defined interfaces, perform one of these tasks:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch# show interface type slot/port</td>
<td>Displays the detailed configuration of the specified interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show interface type slot/port capabilities</td>
<td>Displays detailed information about the capabilities of the specified interface. This option is available only for physical interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show interface type slot/port transceiver</td>
<td>Displays detailed information about the transceiver connected to the specified interface. This option is available only for physical interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show interface brief</td>
<td>Displays the status of all interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show interface flowcontrol</td>
<td>Displays the detailed listing of the flow control settings on all interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show interface debounce</td>
<td>Displays the debounce status of all interfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `show interface` command is invoked from EXEC mode and displays the interface configurations. Without any arguments, this command displays the information for all the configured interfaces in the switch.

This example shows how to display the physical Ethernet interface:

```
switch# show interface ethernet 1/1
Ethernet1/1 is up
Hardware is 1000/10000 Ethernet, address is 000d.e3ca.5f08 (bia 000d.e3ca.5f08)
MTU 1500 bytes, BW 10000000 Kbit, DLY 10 usec,
  reliability 255/255, txload 190/255, rxload 192/255
Encapsulation ARPA
```
Port mode is trunk
cfull-duplex, 10 Gb/s, media type is 1/10g
Input flow-control is off, output flow-control is off
Auto-mdix is turned on
Rate mode is dedicated
Switchport monitor is off
Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
5 minute input rate 942201806 bytes/sec, 14721892 packets/sec
5 minute output rate 935840313 bytes/sec, 14622492 packets/sec
Rx
12914148340 input packets 0 unicast packets 12914148347 multicast packets
0 broadcast packets 0 jumbo packets 0 storm suppression packets
826504965824 bytes
0 No buffer 0 runt 0 Overrun
0 crc 0 Ignored 0 Bad type drop
0 Bad proto drop
Tx
119038487241 output packets 119038487245 multicast packets
0 broadcast packets 0 jumbo packets
7618463256471 bytes
0 output CRC 0 ecc
0 underrun 0 if down drop 0 output error 0 collision 0 deferred
0 late collision 0 lost carrier 0 no carrier
0 babble
0 Rx pause 8031547972 Tx pause 0 reset

This example shows how to display the physical Ethernet capabilities:

```
switch# show interface ethernet 1/1 capabilities
Ethernet1/1
  Model: 734510033
  Type: 10Gbase-(unknown)
  Speed: 1000,10000
  Duplex: full
  Trunk encap. type: 802.1Q
  Channel: yes
  Broadcast suppression: percentage(0-100)
  Flowcontrol: rx-(off/on),tx-(off/on)
  Rate mode: none
  QOS scheduling: rx-(6q1t),tx-(1p6q0t)
  CoS rewrite: no
  ToS rewrite: no
  SPAN: yes
  UDLD: yes
  Link Debounce: yes
  Link Debounce Time: yes
  MDIX: no
  FEX Fabric: yes
```

This example shows how to display the physical Ethernet transceiver:

```
switch# show interface ethernet 1/1 transceiver
Ethernet1/1
  sfp is present
  name is CISCO-EXCELIGHT
  part number is SPP5101SR-C1
  revision is A
  serial number is ECL120901AV
  nominal bitrate is 10300 MBits/sec
  Link length supported for 50/125mm fiber is 82 m(s)
  Link length supported for 62.5/125mm fiber is 26 m(s)
cisco id is --
```
This example shows how to display a brief interface status (some of the output has been removed for brevity):

```
switch# show interface brief
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Ethernet VLAN Type Mode Status Reason Speed Port Ch #
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Eth1/1 200 eth trunk up none 10G(D) --
Eth1/2 1 eth trunk up none 10G(D) --
Eth1/3 300 eth access down SFP not inserted 10G(D) --
Eth1/4 300 eth access down SFP not inserted 10G(D) --
Eth1/5 300 eth access down Link not connected 1000(D) --
Eth1/6 20 eth access down Link not connected 10G(D) --
Eth1/7 300 eth access down SFP not inserted 10G(D) --
```

This example shows how to display the link debounce status (some of the output has been removed for brevity):

```
switch# show interface debounce
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Port Debounce time Value(ms)
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Eth1/1 enable 100
Eth1/2 enable 100
Eth1/3 enable 100
```

This example shows how to display the CDP neighbors:

```
switch# show cdp neighbors
Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute
Device ID Local Intrfce Hldtme Capability Platform Port ID
d13-dist-1 mgmt0 148 S I WS-C2960-24TC Fas0/9
n5k(FLC12080012) Eth1/5 8 S I s N5K-C5020P-BA Eth1/5
```

### Default Physical Ethernet Settings

The following table lists the default settings for all physical Ethernet interfaces:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Debounce</td>
<td>Enable, 100 milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplex</td>
<td>Auto (full-duplex)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encapsulation</td>
<td>ARPA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTU</td>
<td>1500 bytes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Default Physical Ethernet Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Port Mode</td>
<td>Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>Auto (10000)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 MTU cannot be changed per-physical Ethernet interface. You modify MTU by selecting maps of QoS classes.
Configuring Layer 3 Interfaces

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Information About Layer 3 Interfaces, on page 55
- Licensing Requirements for Layer 3 Interfaces, on page 58
- Guidelines and Limitations for Layer 3 Interfaces, on page 58
- Default Settings for Layer 3 Interfaces, on page 59
- Configuring Layer 3 Interfaces, on page 59
- Verifying the Layer 3 Interfaces Configuration, on page 65
- Monitoring Layer 3 Interfaces, on page 66
- Configuration Examples for Layer 3 Interfaces, on page 68
- Related Documents for Layer 3 Interfaces, on page 68
- MIBs for Layer 3 Interfaces, on page 69
- Standards for Layer 3 Interfaces, on page 69

Information About Layer 3 Interfaces

Layer 3 interfaces forward packets to another device using static or dynamic routing protocols. You can use Layer 3 interfaces for IP routing and inter-VLAN routing of Layer 2 traffic.

Routed Interfaces

You can configure a port as a Layer 2 interface or a Layer 3 interface. A routed interface is a physical port that can route IP traffic to another device. A routed interface is a Layer 3 interface only and does not support Layer 2 protocols, such as the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).

All Ethernet ports are switched interfaces by default. You can change this default behavior with the CLI setup script or through the system default switchport command.

You can assign an IP address to the port, enable routing, and assign routing protocol characteristics to this routed interface.

You can also create a Layer 3 port channel from routed interfaces.

Routed interfaces and subinterfaces support exponentially decayed rate counters. Cisco NX-OS tracks the following statistics with these averaging counters:

- Input packets/sec
Subinterfaces

You can create virtual subinterfaces on a parent interface configured as a Layer 3 interface. A parent interface can be a physical port or a port channel.

Subinterfaces divide the parent interface into two or more virtual interfaces on which you can assign unique Layer 3 parameters such as IP addresses and dynamic routing protocols. The IP address for each subinterface should be in a different subnet from any other subinterface on the parent interface.

You create a subinterface with a name that consists of the parent interface name (for example, Ethernet 2/1) followed by a period and then by a number that is unique for that subinterface. For example, you could create a subinterface for Ethernet interface 2/1 named Ethernet 2/1.1 where .1 indicates the subinterface.

Cisco NX-OS enables subinterfaces when the parent interface is enabled. You can shut down a subinterface independent of shutting down the parent interface. If you shut down the parent interface, Cisco NX-OS shuts down all associated subinterfaces as well.

One use of subinterfaces is to provide unique Layer 3 interfaces to each VLAN that is supported by the parent interface. In this scenario, the parent interface connects to a Layer 2 trunking port on another device. You configure a subinterface and associate the subinterface to a VLAN ID using 802.1Q trunking.

The following figure shows a trunking port from a switch that connects to router B on interface E 2/1. This interface contains three subinterfaces that are associated with each of the three VLANs that are carried by the trunking port.

VLAN Interfaces

A VLAN interface or a switch virtual interface (SVI) is a virtual routed interface that connects a VLAN on the device to the Layer 3 router engine on the same device. Only one VLAN interface can be associated with a VLAN, but you need to configure a VLAN interface for a VLAN only when you want to route between VLANs or to provide IP host connectivity to the device through a virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance that is not the management VRF. When you enable VLAN interface creation, Cisco NX-OS creates a VLAN interface for the default VLAN (VLAN 1) to permit remote switch administration.

You must enable the VLAN network interface feature before you can configure it. The system automatically takes a checkpoint prior to disabling the feature, and you can roll back to this checkpoint. For information about rollbacks and checkpoints, see the System Management Configuration Guide for your device.
You cannot delete the VLAN interface for VLAN 1.

You can route across VLAN interfaces to provide Layer 3 inter-VLAN routing by configuring a VLAN interface for each VLAN that you want to route traffic to and assigning an IP address on the VLAN interface. For more information on IP addresses and IP routing, see the Unicast Routing Configuration Guide for your device.

The following figure shows two hosts connected to two VLANs on a device. You can configure VLAN interfaces for each VLAN that allows Host 1 to communicate with Host 2 using IP routing between the VLANs. VLAN 1 communicates at Layer 3 over VLAN interface 1 and VLAN 10 communicates at Layer 3 over VLAN interface 10.

Figure 5: Connecting Two VLANs with VLAN Interfaces

Loopback Interfaces

A loopback interface is a virtual interface with a single endpoint that is always up. Any packet that is transmitted over a loopback interface is immediately received by this interface. Loopback interfaces emulate a physical interface.

You can use loopback interfaces for performance analysis, testing, and local communications. Loopback interfaces can act as a termination address for routing protocol sessions. This loopback configuration allows routing protocol sessions to stay up even if some of the outbound interfaces are down.

IP Addressing Scheme with Private VLANs

When you assign a separate VLAN to each customer, an inefficient IP addressing scheme is created as follows:

- Assigning a block of addresses to a customer VLAN can result in unused IP addresses.
- If the number of devices in the VLAN increases, the number of assigned addresses might not be large enough to accommodate them.

These problems are reduced by using private VLANs, where all members in the private VLAN share a common address space, which is allocated to the primary VLAN. Hosts are connected to secondary VLANs, and the DHCP server assigns them IP addresses from the block of addresses allocated to the primary VLAN. Subsequent IP addresses can be assigned to customer devices in different secondary VLANs, but in the same primary VLAN. When new devices are added, the DHCP server assigns them the next available address from a large pool of subnet addresses.
Licensing Requirements for Layer 3 Interfaces

Although the Cisco Nexus 6000 Series switch has Layer 3 interfaces inherent in the device, you must still install the Layer 3 Base Services Package feature license to use basic Layer 3 features and functionality. For advanced Layer 3 features, you must install the Layer 3 Advanced Enterprise Package feature license. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide.

After installing a Layer 3 license, the following guidelines and limitations apply to the device:

• In Service Software Upgrades (ISSUs) are not supported.

• Temporary Layer 3 feature licenses are not supported. (The Layer 3 Base Services Package license has a grace period of 0.)

• Management Switch Virtual Interfaces (SVIs) are supported without a Layer 3 Base Services Package license, and ISSU can be performed with Management SVIs configured.

• All SVIs (whether management keyword is configured or not) are operationally up when no Layer 3 Base Services Package license is installed. After the Layer 3 Base Services Packages license is installed, routed SVIs are brought operationally down and then brought back up again. This reload happens because the routed SVIs behave like management SVIs before a Layer 3 Base Services Packages license is installed, and the interface state saved in the hardware needs to be cleared followed by programming of the SVI routes in the Forwarding Information Base (FIB).

• If you have not enabled any Layer 3 features or configured any Layer 3 interfaces, you can clear a Layer 3 license without having to reload the device. Then, you can perform a non-disruptive ISSU.

• After clearing a Layer 3 license, you must copy the running-configuration to the startup-configuration and reload the device. Then, you can perform a non-disruptive ISSU.

• Although HSRP and VRRP do not need to be removed before clearing a Layer 3 license, we recommend that you clear their configurations as well.

• Although VRRP and HSRP can be configured without a Layer 3 license, they will not work without a Layer 3 license. If they are configured, non-disruptive ISSU is not supported.

Guidelines and Limitations for Layer 3 Interfaces

Layer 3 interfaces have the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

• If you change a Layer 3 interface to a Layer 2 interface, Cisco NX-OS shuts down the interface, reenables the interface, and removes all configuration specific to Layer 3.

• If you change a Layer 2 interface to a Layer 3 interface, Cisco NX-OS shuts down the interface, reenables the interface, and deletes all configuration specific to Layer 2.

• Beginning with Cisco Nexus release 7.2(1)N1(1), Cisco Nexus 5600 Series and Cisco Nexus 6000 Series Switches support 1019 Layer 3 physical interfaces. In earlier release versions, only 59 Layer 3 physical interfaces with sub interfaces are supported.
Configuring Layer 3 Interfaces

Default Settings for Layer 3 Interfaces

The default setting for the Layer 3 Admin state is Shut.

Configuring Layer 3 Interfaces

Configuring a Routed Interface

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# interface ethernet slot/port</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note</td>
<td>If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# no switchport</td>
<td>Configures the interface as a Layer 3 interface and deletes any configuration specific to Layer 2 on this interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note</td>
<td>To convert a Layer 3 interface back into a Layer 2 interface, use the switchport command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# [ip</td>
<td>ipv6]ip-address/length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# show interfaces</td>
<td>Displays the Layer 3 interface statistics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to configure an IPv4-routed Layer 3 interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# no switchport
switch(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.1/8
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```
Configuring a Subinterface

Before you begin

- Configure the parent interface as a routed interface.
- Create the port-channel interface if you want to create a subinterface on that port channel.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# interface ethernet slot/port.number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>switch(config-if)# [ip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>switch(config-if)# encapsulation dot1Q vlan-id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# show interfaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.

Example

This example shows how to create a subinterface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.1/8
switch(config-if)# encapsulation dot1Q 33
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Configuring the Bandwidth on an Interface

You can configure the bandwidth for a routed interface, port channel, or subinterface.
### Configuring Layer 3 Interfaces

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>switch# configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>switch(config)# interface ethernet slot/port</code></td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode. The range for the <em>slot</em> is from 1 to 255. The range for the <em>port</em> is from 1 to 128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>`switch(config-if)# bandwidth [value</td>
<td>inherit [value]]`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <em>value</em>—Size of the bandwidth in kilobytes. The range is from 1 to 1000000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <em>inherit</em>—Indicates that all subinterfaces of this interface inherit either the bandwidth value (if a value is specified) or the bandwidth of the parent interface (if a value is not specified).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) <code>switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to configure Ethernet interface 2/1 with a bandwidth value of 80000:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# bandwidth 80000
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

### Configuring a VLAN Interface

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td><code>switch# configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td><code>switch(config)# feature interface-vlan</code></td>
<td>Enables VLAN interface mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### MAP_VLAN_INT gotta create VLAN interface

#### COMMANDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td><code>switch(config)# interface vlan number</code></td>
<td>Creates a VLAN interface. The number range is from 1 to 4094.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>`switch(config-if)# [ip</td>
<td>ipv6 ] address ip-address/length`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td><code>switch(config-if)# no shutdown</code></td>
<td>Brings the interface up administratively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>(Optional) <code>switch(config-if)# show interface vlan number</code></td>
<td>Displays the VLAN interface statistics. The number range is from 1 to 4094.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>(Optional) <code>switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### EXAMPLE

This example shows how to create a VLAN interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature interface-vlan
switch(config)# interface vlan 10
switch(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.1/8
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

### MAPPING SECONDARY VLANs TO THE LAYER 3 VLAN INTERFACE OF A PRIMARY VLAN

To map secondary VLANs to the Layer 3 VLAN interface of a primary VLAN to allow Layer 3 switching of private VLAN ingress traffic, perform this task:

#### PROCEDURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>Router(config)# interface-vlan primary_vlan_ID</code></td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode for the primary VLAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Isolated and community VLANs are both called secondary VLANs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>`Router(config-if)# private-vlan mapping {secondary_vlan_list</td>
<td>add secondary_vlan_list</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

- The `private-vlan mapping interface` configuration command only affects private VLAN ingress traffic that is Layer 3-switched.

- The `secondary_vlan_list` parameter cannot contain spaces. It can contain multiple comma-separated items. Each item can be a single private VLAN ID or a hyphenated range of private VLAN IDs.

- Enter a `secondary_vlan_list` parameter or use the `add` keyword with a `secondary_vlan_list` parameter to map the secondary VLANs to the primary VLAN.

- Use the `remove` keyword with a `secondary_vlan_list` parameter to clear the mapping between secondary VLANs and the primary VLAN.

### Command or Action | Purpose
--- | ---
```
no private-vlan mapping
``` | Clears the mapping between the secondary VLANs and the primary VLAN.
```
end
``` | Exits configuration mode.
```
show interface private-vlan mapping
``` | Verifies the configuration.

### Example

This example shows how to permit routing of secondary VLAN ingress traffic from private VLANs 303 through 307, 309, and 440 and verify the configuration:

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface vlan 202
Router(config-if)# private-vlan mapping add 303-307,309,440
Router(config-if)# end
Router# show interfaces private-vlan mapping
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Secondary VLAN Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vlan202</td>
<td>303 community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vlan202</td>
<td>304 community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vlan202</td>
<td>305 community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vlan202</td>
<td>306 community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vlan202</td>
<td>307 community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vlan202</td>
<td>309 community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vlan202</td>
<td>440 isolated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Router#
Configuring a Loopback Interface

**Before you begin**
Ensure that the IP address of the loopback interface is unique across all routers on the network.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# interface loopback instance</td>
<td>Creates a loopback interface. The instance range is from 0 to 1023.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config-if)# [ip</td>
<td>ipv6 ] address ip-address/length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> (Optional) switch(config-if)# show interface loopback instance</td>
<td>Displays the loopback interface statistics. The instance range is from 0 to 1023.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> (Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**
This example shows how to create a loopback interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface loopback 0
switch(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.100/8
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Assigning an Interface to a VRF

**Before you begin**
Assign the IP address for a tunnel interface after you have configured the interface for a VRF.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# interface interface-type number</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config-if)#vrf member vrf-name</td>
<td>Adds this interface to a VRF.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Verifying the Layer 3 Interfaces Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `show interface ethernet slot/port` | Displays the Layer 3 interface configuration, status, and counters (including the 5-minute exponentially decayed moving average of inbound and outbound packet and byte rates).  
  **Note** If this is a 10G breakout port, the `slot/port` syntax is `QSFP-module/port`. |
| `show interface ethernet slot/port brief` | Displays the Layer 3 interface operational status.  
  **Note** If this is a 10G breakout port, the `slot/port` syntax is `QSFP-module/port`. |
| `show interface ethernet slot/port capabilities` | Displays the Layer 3 interface capabilities, including port type, speed, and duplex.  
  **Note** If this is a 10G breakout port, the `slot/port` syntax is `QSFP-module/port`. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface ethernet slot/port description</code></td>
<td>Displays the Layer 3 interface description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If this is a 10G breakout port, the <code>slot/port</code> syntax is <code>QSFP-module/port</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface ethernet slot/port status</code></td>
<td>Displays the Layer 3 interface administrative status, port mode, speed, and duplex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If this is a 10G breakout port, the <code>slot/port</code> syntax is <code>QSFP-module/port</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface ethernet slot/port,number</code></td>
<td>Displays the subinterface configuration, status, and counters (including the f-minute exponentially decayed moving average of inbound and outbound packet and byte rates).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If this is a 10G breakout port, the <code>slot/port</code> syntax is <code>QSFP-module/port</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface port-channel channel-id,number</code></td>
<td>Displays the port-channel subinterface configuration, status, and counters (including the 5-minute exponentially decayed moving average of inbound and outbound packet and byte rates).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface loopback number</code></td>
<td>Displays the loopback interface configuration, status, and counters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface loopback number brief</code></td>
<td>Displays the loopback interface operational status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface loopback number description</code></td>
<td>Displays the loopback interface description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface loopback number status</code></td>
<td>Displays the loopback interface administrative status and protocol status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface vlan number</code></td>
<td>Displays the VLAN interface configuration, status, and counters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface vlan number brief</code></td>
<td>Displays the VLAN interface operational status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface vlan number description</code></td>
<td>Displays the VLAN interface description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface vlan number private-vlan mapping</code></td>
<td>Displays the VLAN interface private VLAN information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show interface vlan number status</code></td>
<td>Displays the VLAN interface administrative status and protocol status.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Monitoring Layer 3 Interfaces**

Use one of the following commands to display statistics about the feature:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `show interface ethernet slot/port counters` | Displays the Layer 3 interface statistics (unicast, multicast, and broadcast).  
**Note** If this is a 10G breakout port, the `slot/port` syntax is `QSFP-module/port`. |
| `show interface ethernet slot/port counters brief` | Displays the Layer 3 interface input and output counters.  
**Note** If this is a 10G breakout port, the `slot/port` syntax is `QSFP-module/port`. |
| `show interface ethernet slot/port counters detailed [all]` | Displays the Layer 3 interface statistics. You can optionally include all 32-bit and 64-bit packet and byte counters (including errors).  
**Note** If this is a 10G breakout port, the `slot/port` syntax is `QSFP-module/port`. |
| `show interface ethernet slot/port counters error` | Displays the Layer 3 interface input and output errors.  
**Note** If this is a 10G breakout port, the `slot/port` syntax is `QSFP-module/port`. |
| `show interface ethernet slot/port counters snmp` | Displays the Layer 3 interface counters reported by SNMP MIBs. You cannot clear these counters.  
**Note** If this is a 10G breakout port, the `slot/port` syntax is `QSFP-module/port`. |
| `show interface ethernet slot/port.number counters` | Displays the subinterface statistics (unicast, multicast, and broadcast).  
**Note** If this is a 10G breakout port, the `slot/port` syntax is `QSFP-module/port`. |
| `show interface port-channel channel-id.number counters` | Displays the port-channel subinterface statistics (unicast, multicast, and broadcast). |
| `show interface loopback number counters` | Displays the loopback interface input and output counters (unicast, multicast, and broadcast). |
| `show interface loopback number counters detailed [all]` | Displays the loopback interface statistics. You can optionally include all 32-bit and 64-bit packet and byte counters (including errors). |
| `show interface loopback number counters errors` | Displays the loopback interface input and output errors. |
### Configuration Examples for Layer 3 Interfaces

This example shows how to configure Ethernet subinterfaces:

```plaintext
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1.10
switch(config-if)# description Layer 3 for VLAN 10
switch(config-if)# encapsulation dot1q 10
switch(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.1/8
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

This example shows how to configure a VLAN interface:

```plaintext
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# interface vlan 100
switch(config-if)# ipv6 address 33:0DB::2/8
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

This example shows how to configure a loopback interface:

```plaintext
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# interface loopback 3
switch(config-if)# ip address 192.0.2.2/32
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

### Related Documents for Layer 3 Interfaces

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topics</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command syntax</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>“Configuring IP” chapter in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLAN</td>
<td>“Configuring VLANs” chapter in the</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MIBs for Layer 3 Interfaces

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>MIB Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IF-MIB</td>
<td>To locate and download MIBs, go to the following URL:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CISCO-IF-EXTENSION-MIB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETHERLIKE-MIB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standards for Layer 3 Interfaces

No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.
Standards for Layer 3 Interfaces
CHAPTER 5

Configuring Bidirectional Forwarding Detection

This chapter contains the following sections:
- Information About BFD, on page 71
- Licensing Requirements for BFD, on page 73
- Prerequisites, on page 74
- Guidelines and Limitations, on page 74
- BFD Default Settings, on page 75
- Configuring BFD, on page 76
- Verifying the BFD Configuration, on page 93
- Monitoring BFD, on page 93
- Configuration Examples for BFD, on page 94
- Related Documents, on page 94
- Related Standards, on page 94

Information About BFD

The Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) provides fast forwarding-path failure detection times for media types, encapsulations, topologies, and routing protocols. You can use BFD to detect forwarding path failures at a uniform rate, rather than at variable rates for different protocol hello mechanisms. BFD makes network profiling and planning easier and reconvergence time consistent and predictable.

BFD makes all routing and control plane applications less CPU intensive by offloading Layer 3 hello message adjacency detection to a single process. The BFD process runs uniformly for all applications and detects failures at subsecond intervals.

A BFD global configuration command is available for fabricpath interfaces. The `bfd` keyword in the `config-fabricpath-isis` command mode, enables BFD on all the FabricPath interfaces. The interface specific commands override the global values.

For FabricPath BFD, fabricpath-isis is the client. FabricPath-ISIS is a part of feature-set fabricpath.

Asynchronous Mode

Cisco NX-OS supports the BFD asynchronous mode, which sends BFD control packets between two adjacent devices to activate and maintain BFD neighbor sessions between the devices. You configure BFD on both devices (or BFD neighbors). After BFD has been enabled on the interfaces and on the appropriate protocols,
Cisco NX-OS creates a BFD session, negotiates BFD session parameters, and begins to send BFD control packets to each BFD neighbor at the negotiated interval. The BFD session parameters include the following:

- Desired minimum transmit interval—The interval at which this device wants to send BFD hello messages.
- Required minimum receive interval—The minimum interval at which this device can accept BFD hello messages from another BFD device.
- Detect multiplier—The number of missing BFD hello messages from another BFD device before this local device detects a fault in the forwarding path.

The following figure shows how a BFD session is established. The figure shows a simple network with two routers running Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) and BFD. When OSPF discovers a neighbor (1), it sends a request to the local BFD process to initiate a BFD neighbor session with the OSPF neighbor router (2). The BFD neighbor session with the OSPF neighbor router is now established (3).

**Figure 6: Establishing a BFD Neighbor Relationship**

Detection of Failures

After a BFD session has been established and timer negotiations are complete, BFD neighbors send BFD control packets that act in the same manner as an IGP hello protocol to detect liveliness, except at a more accelerated rate. BFD detects a failure, but the protocol must take action to bypass a failed peer.

BFD sends a failure detection notice to the BFD-enabled protocols when it detects a failure in the forwarding path. The local device can then initiate the protocol recalculation process and reduce the overall network convergence time.

The following figure shows what happens when a failure occurs in the network (1). The BFD neighbor session with the OSPF neighbor router is torn down (2). BFD notifies the local OSPF process that the BFD neighbor is no longer reachable (3). The local OSPF process tears down the OSPF neighbor relationship (4). If an alternative path is available, the routers immediately start converging on it.

---

**Note**

The BFD failure detection occurs in less than a second, which is much faster than OSPF Hello messages could detect the same failure.
BFD Echo Function

The BFD echo function sends echo packets from the forwarding engine to the remote BFD neighbor. The BFD neighbor forwards the echo packet back along the same path in order to perform detection; the BFD neighbor does not participate in the actual forwarding of the echo packets. The echo function and the forwarding engine are responsible for the detection process. BFD can use the slow timer to slow down the asynchronous session when the echo function is enabled and reduce the number of BFD control packets that are sent between two BFD neighbors. Also, the forwarding engine tests the forwarding path on the remote (neighbor) system without involving the remote system, so there is less interpacket delay variability and faster failure detection times.

The echo function is asymmetric when both BFD neighbors are running echo function.

Note

Unicast Reverse Path Forwarding check (uRPF) is disabled by default. If you need to enable it on an interface functioning with BFD, the BFD echo function must be disabled.

Security

Cisco NX-OS uses the packet Time to Live (TTL) value to verify that the BFD packets came from an adjacent BFD peer. For all asynchronous and echo request packets, the BFD neighbor sets the TTL value to 255 and the local BFD process verifies the TTL value as 255 before processing the incoming packet. For the echo response packet, BFD sets the TTL value to 254.

You can configure SHA-1 authentication of BFD packets.

Virtualization Support

BFD supports virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instances.

Licensing Requirements for BFD

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:
### Prerequisites

BFD has the following prerequisites:

- You must enable the BFD feature, see Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76.
- For any client protocols that you want to enable BFD on, enable BFD in that client protocol, see Configuring BFD Support for Routing Protocols, on page 83.
- Disable ICMPv4 redirect messages alone on Cisco Nexus 6000 Series platforms.
- Disable the IP packet verification check for identical IP source and destination addresses in the default VRF.
- See other detailed prerequisites that are listed with the configuration tasks.

### Guidelines and Limitations

BFD has the following configuration guidelines and limitations for the Cisco Nexus 6000 Series switch:

- BFD supports BFD version 1.
- BFD supports IPv4.
- BFD supports single-hop BFD.
- BFD supports the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP).
- BFD for BGP supports single-hop External Border Gateway Protocol (EBGP) and internal Border Gateway Protocol (iBGP) peers.
- BFD supports the Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP).
- BFD supports the Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) routing protocol.
- BFD supports keyed SHA-1 authentication.
- BFD supports the following Layer 3 interfaces: physical interfaces, port channels, subinterfaces, and VLAN interfaces.
- BFD does not support Anycast HSRP.
- BFD depends on Layer 3 adjacency information to discover topology changes, including Layer 2 topology changes. A BFD session on a VLAN interface (SVI) may not be up after the convergence of the Layer 2 topology if there is no Layer 3 adjacency information available.
- Port-channel configuration limitations are as follows:
• For Layer 3 port channels used by BFD, you must enable Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) on the port channel.

• For Layer 2 port channels used by SVI sessions, you must enable LACP on the port channel.

• BFD is supported on SVI interfaces that are formed over virtual port channels (vPCs), vPC peer-links and FabricPath links.

• SVI limitations are as follows:
  • An ASIC reset causes traffic disruption for other ports and could possibly cause SVI sessions on other ports to flap.
  • When you change the topology (for example, when you add or delete a link into a VLAN or delete a member from a Layer 2 port channel), the SVI session could be affected. The SVI session might go down first and then come up after the topology discovery is finished.

Tip

If you do not want the SVI sessions to flap and you need to change the topology, you can disable the BFD feature before making the changes and reenable BFD after the changes have been made. You can also configure the BFD timer to be a large value (for example, 5 seconds), and change it back to a fast timer after the topology change is complete.

• When you configure the BFD Echo function on the distributed Layer 3 port channels, reloading a member module flaps the BFD session hosted on that module, which results in a packet loss.

### BFD Default Settings

The following table lists the default settings for BFD parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BFD feature</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required minimum receive interval</td>
<td>50 milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desired minimum transmit interval</td>
<td>50 milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detect multiplier</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echo function</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Asynchronous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port channel</td>
<td>Logical mode (one session per source-destination pair address)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow timer</td>
<td>2000 milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subinterface optimization</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring BFD

BFD Configuration Hierarchy

You can configure BFD at the global level and at the interface or subinterface level (for physical interfaces and port channels). The interface or subinterface configuration overrides global configuration. On supported interfaces, the subinterface-level configuration overrides the interface or port-channel configuration unless you enable subinterface optimization on the port-channel interface. See Optimizing BFD on Subinterfaces, on page 82 for more information.

Note

Using BFD per-link mode and subinterface optimization simultaneously on a Layer 3 port channel is not supported.

For physical ports that are members of a port channel, the member port inherits the master port-channel BFD configuration. The member port subinterfaces can override the master port-channel BFD configuration, unless subinterface optimization is enabled.

Task Flow for Configuring BFD

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# feature bfd</td>
<td>Enables BFD.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enabling the BFD Feature

Before you begin

You must enable the BFD feature before you can configure BFD on an interface and protocol within a device VRF.

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF when you are about to change the BFD configuration at the protocol global level (for example, for OSPF or BGP).

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# feature bfd</td>
<td>Enables BFD.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Displays enabled and disabled features.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) switch(config)# <code>show feature</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>include bfd</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) switch(config)# <code>copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to enable BFD:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature bfd
switch(config)# show feature | include bfd
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

### Configuring Global BFD Parameters

#### Before you begin

You can configure the BFD session parameters for all BFD sessions on the device. The BFD session parameters are negotiated between the BFD peers in a three-way handshake.

See Configuring BFD on an Interface, on page 78 to override these global session parameters on an interface.

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.

Enable the BFD feature. See Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Configures the BFD session parameters for all BFD sessions on the device. You can override these values by configuring the BFD session parameters on an interface. Use the optional <code>fabricpath</code> keyword to configure the global parameters for fabricpath BFD sessions. The <code>minTx</code> and <code>min_Rx</code> <code>msec</code> range is from 250 to 999 milliseconds, and the default is 250. The <code>multiplier</code> <code>value</code> range is from 3 to 50. The multiplier default is 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)# <code>bfd [fabricpath] interval minTx min_Rx msec multiplier value</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** Starting from Cisco Nexus 7.0(0)N1(1) release onwards, the minimum `bfd` `minimum_interval` value range is changed from 250 to 50 milliseconds.
### Configuring Bidirectional Forwarding Detection

#### Configuring BFD on an Interface

You can configure the BFD session parameters for all BFD sessions on an interface. The BFD session parameters are negotiated between the BFD peers in a three-way handshake.

This configuration overrides the global session parameters for the configured interface.

> **Note**
> You can use `bfd [fabricpath]` commands on an interface in fabricpath mode. The interface should be configured with `switchport mode fabricpath` to enable fabricpath mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>switch(config)# bfd [fabricpath] slow-timer [milliseconds]</code></td>
<td>Configures the slow timer used in the echo function. This value determines how fast BFD starts up a new session and at what speed the asynchronous sessions use for BFD control packets when the echo function is enabled. The slow-timer value is used as the new control packet interval, while the echo packets use the configured BFD intervals. The echo packets are used for link failure detection, while the control packets at the slower rate maintain the BFD session. The range is from 1000 to 30000 milliseconds. The default is 2000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><code>switch(config)# bfd echo-interface loopback interface number</code></td>
<td>Configures the interface used for BFD echo frames. This command changes the source address for the echo packets to the one configured on the specified loopback interface. The interface number range is from 0 to 1023.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>(Optional) <code>switch(config)# show running-config bfd</code></td>
<td>Displays the BFD running configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>(Optional) <code>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to configure global BFD parameters:

```bash
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# bfd interval 250 min_rx 250 multiplier 3
switch(config)# bfd slow-timer 2000
switch(config)# bfd echo-interface loopback 1 3
switch(config-if)# show running-config bfd
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

---

Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Interfaces Configuration Guide, Release 6.x
Before you begin

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.

Enable the BFD feature. See Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode. Use the ? keyword to display the supported interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)# interface int-if</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Enables fabricpath BFD at the interface level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config-if)# bfd [fabricpath]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>Configures the BFD session parameters for all BFD sessions on the interface. These values override the global BFD session parameters. Use the optional fabricpath keyword to configure the global parameters for fabricpath BFD sessions. The mintx and msec range is from 50 to 999 milliseconds and the default is 250. The multiplier range is from 3 to 50. The multiplier default is 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config-if)# bfd [fabricpath] interval mintx min_rx msec multiplier value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>Configures SHA-1 authentication for all BFD sessions on the interface. The ascii_key string is a secret key shared among BFD peers. The id value, a number between 0 and 255, is assigned to this particular ascii_key. BFD packets specify the key by ID, which allows the use of multiple active keys. To disable SHA-1 authentication on the interface, use the no form of this command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# bfd [fabricpath] authentication keyed-SHA1 key-id id {hex-key hex-key</td>
<td>key ascii-key}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>Displays the BFD running configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# show running-config bfd</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong></td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to configure BFD on an interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# bfd interval 250 min_rx 250 multiplier 3
switch(config-if)# bfd authentication keyed-SHA1 key-id 1 key cisco123
switch(config-if)# show running-config bfd
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```
Configuring BFD on a Port Channel

You can configure the BFD session parameters for all BFD sessions on a port channel. The BFD session parameters are negotiated between the BFD peers in a three-way handshake.

If you use per-link mode for Layer 3 port channels, BFD creates a session for each link in the port channel and provides an aggregate result to client protocols. For example, if the BFD session for one link on a port channel is up, BFD informs client protocols, such as OSPF, that the port channel is up.

This configuration overrides the global session parameters for the configured port channel. The member ports of the port channel inherit the port channel BFD session parameters, unless you configure subinterface-level BFD parameters on a member port. In that case, the member port subinterface uses the subinterface BFD configuration if subinterface optimization is not enabled. See Optimizing BFD on Subinterfaces, on page 82 for more information.

Before you begin

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.

Ensure that you enable LACP on the port channel before you enable BFD.

Enable the BFD feature. See “Enabling the BFD Feature.”

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 switch(config)# interface port-channel number</td>
<td>Enters port channel configuration mode. Use the ? keyword to display the supported number range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 switch(config-if)# bfd per-link</td>
<td>Configures the BFD sessions for each link in the port channel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 switch(config-if)# bfd fabricpath per-link</td>
<td>Configures the BFD sessions for each link in the port channel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5 (Optional) switch(config-if)# bfd [fabricpath]</td>
<td>Configures the BFD session parameters for all BFD sessions on the port channel. These values override the global BFD session parameters. Use the optional fabricpath keyword to configure the global parameters for fabricpath BFD sessions. The mintx and min_rx msec range is from 50 to 999 milliseconds and the default is 50. The multiplier range is from 1 to 50. The multiplier default is 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval mintx min_rx msec multiplier value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6 (Optional) switch(config-if)# bfd [fabricpath]</td>
<td>Configures SHA-1 authentication for all BFD sessions on the interface. The ascii key string is a secret key shared among BFD peers. The id value, a number between 0 and 255, is assigned to this particular ascii_key. BFD packets specify the key by ID, which allows the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication keyed-SHA1 key-id {hex-key hex-key</td>
<td>key ascii-key }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>use of multiple active keys. To disable SHA-1 authentication on the interface, use the no form of this command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 7</td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# show running-config bfd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Displays the BFD running configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 8</td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to configure BFD on a port channel:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface port-channel 2
switch(config-if)# bfd interval 250 min_rx 250 multiplier 3
switch(config-if)# bfd authentication keyed-SHA1 key-id 1 key cisco123
switch(config-if)# show running-config bfd
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

**Configuring BFD Echo Function**

You can configure the BFD echo function on one or both ends of a BFD-monitored link. The echo function slows down the required minimum receive interval, based on the configured slow timer. The RequiredMinEchoRx BFD session parameter is set to zero if the echo function is disabled. The slow timer becomes the required minimum receive interval if the echo function is enabled.

You can configure a fabricpath (L2) BFD session on any port belonging to any VLAN provided the default VLAN (VLAN 1) is configured in fabricpath mode. It is a requirement that the default VLAN 1 is in fabricpath mode for fabricpath BFD sessions to come up.

**Note**

Echo mode is not supported on fabricpath interfaces.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.

Enable the BFD feature. See Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76.

Configure the BFD session parameters. See Configuring Global BFD Parameters, on page 77 or Configuring BFD on an Interface, on page 78.

Ensure that ICMP redirect messages are disabled on BFD-enabled interfaces. Use the no ip redirects command or the no ipv6 redirects command on the interface.

Ensure that the IP packet verification check for identical IP source and destination addresses is disabled.
## Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# bfd [fabricpath] slow-timer[milliseconds]</td>
<td>Configures the slow timer used in the echo function. This value determines how fast BFD starts up a new session and is used to slow down the asynchronous sessions when the BFD echo function is enabled. This value overwrites the required minimum receive interval when the echo function is enabled. The range is from 1000 to 30000 milliseconds. The default is 2000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config)# interface int-if</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode. Use the ? keyword to display the supported interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# bfd echo</td>
<td>Enables the echo function. The default is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 5</td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# show running-config bfd</td>
<td>Displays the BFD running configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 6</td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Example

This example shows how to configure the BFD Echo Function.

```bash
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# bfd slow-timer 2000
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# bfd echo
switch(config-if)# show running-config bfd
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

## Optimizing BFD on Subinterfaces

You can optimize BFD on subinterfaces. BFD creates sessions for all configured subinterfaces. BFD sets the subinterface with the lowest configured VLAN ID as the master subinterface, and that subinterface uses the BFD session parameters of the parent interface. The remaining subinterfaces use the slow timer. If the optimized subinterface session detects an error, BFD marks all subinterfaces on that physical interface as down.

### Before you begin

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.
Enable the BFD feature. See Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76.
Configure the BFD session parameters. See Configuring Global BFD Parameters, on page 77 or Configuring BFD on an Interface, on page 78.

Ensure that these subinterfaces connect to another Cisco NX-OS device. This feature is supported on Cisco NX-OS only.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><code>switch# configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><code>switch(config)# interface int-if</code></td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode. Use the ? keyword to display the supported interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><code>switch(config-if)# bfd optimize subinterface</code></td>
<td>Optimizes subinterfaces on a BFD-enabled interface. The default is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(Optional) <code>switch(config-if)# show running-config bfd</code></td>
<td>Displays the BFD running configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>(Optional) <code>switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</code></td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to optimize BFD on an interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# bfd optimize subinterface
switch(config-if)# show running-config bfd
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

### Configuring BFD Support for Routing Protocols

The Cisco Nexus 6000 Series switches provide BFD support for these routing protocols:

- Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)
- Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP)
- Open Shortest Path First Version 2 (OSPFv2)
- Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP)
- Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)
- Static routes
- Protocol-Independent Multicast (PIM)
- FabricPath on Intermediate System to Intermediate System (IS-IS)
The BFD support for routing protocols are supported from version 6.0(2)N2(2) and later.

Configuring BFD on BGP

You can configure BFD for the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP).

Before you begin

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.

Enable the BFD feature. See Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76.

Configure the BFD session parameters. See Configuring Global BFD Parameters, on page 77 or Configuring BFD on an Interface, on page 78.

Enable the BGP feature.

See the Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide, Release 6.x, for more information.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# router bgp as-number</td>
<td>Enables BGP and assigns the AS number to the local BGP speaker. The AS number can be a 16-bit integer or a 32-bit integer in the form of a higher 16-bit decimal number and a lower 16-bit decimal number in xx.xx format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config-router)# neighbor {ip-address} remote-as as-number</td>
<td>Configures the IPv4 address and AS number for a remote BGP peer. The ip-address format is x.x.x.x.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switch(config-router-neighbor)# bfd</td>
<td>Enables BFD for this BGP peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switch(config-router-neighbor)# update-source interface-type number</td>
<td>Brings up BFD for this BGP peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> (Optional) switch(config-router-neighbor)# show running-config bgp</td>
<td>Displays the BGP running configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> (Optional) switch(config-router-neighbor)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to configure BFD on BGP:
Configuring BFD on EIGRP

Before you begin

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.

Enable the BFD feature. See Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76.

Configure the BFD session parameters. See Configuring Global BFD Parameters, on page 77 or Configuring BFD on an Interface, on page 78.

Enable the EIGRP feature.

See the Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide, Release 6.x, for more information.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# router eigrp instance-tag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-router)# bfd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>switch(config-router)# interface int-if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# ip eigrp instance-tag bfd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# show ip eigrp [vrf vrf-name] [interface if]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring BFD on OSPF

You can configure BFD for the Open Shortest Path First version 2 (OSPFv2).

**Before you begin**
- Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.
- Enable the BFD feature. See Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76.
- Configure the BFD session parameters. See Configuring Global BFD Parameters, on page 77 or Configuring BFD on an Interface, on page 78.
- Enable the OSPF feature.

See the Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide, Release 6.x, for more information.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# router ospf instance-tag</td>
<td>Creates a new OSPFv2 instance with the configured instance tag. The instance tag can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 20 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-router)# bfd</td>
<td>Enables BFD for this OSPFv2 instance. Each OSPFv2 interface must also be enabled or disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>switch(config-router)# interface int-if</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode. Use the ? keyword to display the supported interfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring BFD on EIGRP

This example shows how to configure BFD on EIGRP:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# router eigrp Test1
switch(config-router)# bfd
switch(config-router)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# ip eigrp Test1 bfd
switch(config-if)# show ip eigrp
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```
### Configuring BFD on OSPF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> (Optional) switch(config-if)# ip ospf bfd</td>
<td>Enables or disables BFD on an OSPFv2 interface. The default is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> (Optional) switch(config-if)# show ip ospf [vrf vrf-name] [interface if]</td>
<td>Displays the OSPF running configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> (Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Example

This example shows how to configure BFD on OSPF:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# router ospf 201
switch(config-router)# bfd
switch(config-router)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# ip ospf bfd
switch(config-if)# show ip ospf
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

### Configuring BFD on HSRP

You can configure BFD for the Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP). The active and standby HSRP routers track each other through BFD.

If BFD on the standby HSRP router detects that the active HSRP router is down, the standby HSRP router treats this event as an active timer expiry and takes over as the active HSRP router. The `show hsrp detail` command shows this event as BFD@Act-down or BFD@Sby-down.

#### Before you begin

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.

Enable the BFD feature. See **Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76**.

Configure the BFD session parameters. See Configuring Global BFD Parameters, on page 77 or Configuring BFD on an Interface, on page 78.

Enable the HSRP feature. See the Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide, Release 6.x, for more information.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> (Optional) switch(config)# hsrp bfd all-interfaces</td>
<td>Enables or disables BFD on all HSRP interfaces. The default is disabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring BFD on VRRP

You can configure BFD for the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP). The active and standby VRRP routers track each other through BFD. If BFD on the standby VRRP router detects that the active VRRP router is down, the standby VRRP router treats this event as an active timer expiry and takes over as the active VRRP router.

The `show vrrp detail` command shows this event as BFD@Act-down or BFD@Sby-down.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.

Enable the BFD feature. See Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76.

Configure the BFD session parameters. See Configuring Global BFD Parameters, on page 77 or Configuring BFD on an Interface, on page 78.

Enable the VRRP feature.

See the Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide, Release 6.x, for more information.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Table 1: Configuring BFD on HSRP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# interface int-if</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode. Use the ? keyword to display the supported interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# hsrp bfd</td>
<td>Enables or disables BFD on an HSRP interface. The default is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# show running-config hsrp</td>
<td>Displays the HSRP running configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Example

This example shows how to configure BFD on HSRP:

```bash
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# hsrp bfd all-interfaces
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# hsrp bfd
switch(config-if)# show running-config hsrp
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```
### Configuring BFD on Static Routes

You can configure BFD for static routes on an interface. You can optionally configure BFD on a static route within a virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance.

#### Before you begin

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.

Enable the BFD feature. See Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76.

Configure the BFD session parameters. See Configuring Global BFD Parameters, on page 77 or Configuring BFD on an Interface, on page 78.

Enable the HSRP feature. See the Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide, Release 6.x, for more information.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config)# vrf context vrf-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters VRF configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring BFD on PIM

You can configure BFD for the Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) protocol.

#### Before you begin

Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.

Enable the BFD feature. See Enabling the BFD Feature, on page 76.

Configure the BFD session parameters. See Configuring Global BFD Parameters, on page 77 or Configuring BFD on an Interface, on page 78.

Enable the PIM feature. See the *Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Multicast Routing Configuration Guide, Release 6.x*, for more information.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# ip pim bfd</td>
<td>Enables BFD for PIM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config)# interface int-if</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode. Use the ? keyword to display the supported interfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Disabling BFD on an Interface

You can selectively disable BFD on an interface for a routing protocol that has BFD enabled at the global or VRF level.

To disable BFD on an interface, use one of the following commands in interface configuration mode:

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>switch(config)# ip eigrp instance-tag bfd disable</td>
<td>Enables BFD on an EIGRP interface. The instance tag can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 20 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: switch(config)# ip eigrp Test1 bfd disable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# ip ospf bfd disable</td>
<td>Enables BFD on an OSPFv2 interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: switch(config-if)# ip ospf bfd disable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuring FabricPath BFD on All IS-IS Interfaces

**Before you begin**

- Ensure that you are in the correct VRF.
- Enable the BFD feature.

---

### Purpose of Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# ip pim bfd-instance [disable]</td>
<td>Enables or disables BFD on a PIM interface. The default is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# show running-config pim</td>
<td>Displays the PIM running configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the configuration persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to configure BFD on PIM:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ip pim bfd
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# ip pim bfd-instance
switch(config-if)# show running-config pim
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```
• Configure the BFD session parameters.
• The ISIS feature is enabled by default when entering the `feature-set fabricpath` command.
• See the *Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide, Release 7.x*, for more information.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# <code>fabricpath domain default</code></td>
<td>Enters the global FabricPath Layer 2 Intermediate System, to Intermediate System (IS-IS) configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config-fabricpath-isis)# <code>bfd</code></td>
<td>Enables FabricPath BFD on all IS-IS interfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example show how to configure FabricPath BFD on all IS-IS interfaces:

```
switch# `configure terminal`
switch(config)# `fabricpath domain default`
switch(config)# `fabricpath-isis)# `bfd`
```

### Configuring FabricPath BFD on a Specific Interface

#### Before you begin
- Enable the BFD feature.
- Configure the BFD session parameters.
- The ISIS feature is enabled by default when entering the `feature-set fabricpath` command.
- See the *Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Configuration Guide, Release 7.x*, for more information.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# <code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# <code>[no] bfd fabricpath encap-ce</code></td>
<td>Enables the user to choose an encapsulation mode for the L2BFD frames on a per-session basis. On enabling the command, it sends out the frames without Fabricpath encapsulation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Purpose Command or Action  
**The default mode is to send frames with Fabricpath encapsulation.**

**Step 3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch(config-if)# fabricpath isis bfd</td>
<td>Enables the FabricPath BFD on the interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to configure FabricPath BFD on a specific interface:

```plaintext
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# [no] bfd fabricpath encap-ce
switch(config-if)# fabricpath isis bfd
```

### Verifying the BFD Configuration

Use the following commands to verify BFD:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch# show running-config bfd</td>
<td>Displays information about BFD for a supported application, such as BGP or OSPFv2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show startup-config bfd</td>
<td>Displays information about the BFD configuration that will be applied on startup.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For detailed information about the fields in the output from these commands, see the *Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Interfaces Command Reference.*

### Monitoring BFD

Use the following commands to monitor BFD:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch# show bfd neighbors [application name] [details]</td>
<td>Displays information about BFD for a supported application, such as BGP or OSPFv2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show bfd neighbors [interface int-if] [details]</td>
<td>Displays information about BFD on a specified interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show bfd neighbors [dest-ip ip-address] [src-ip ip-address] [details]</td>
<td>Displays information about BFD on the specified session on an interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show bfd neighbors [vrf vrf-name] [details]</td>
<td>Displays information about BFD for a VRF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show bfd neighbors [fabricpath] [dest-ip ip-address] [src-ip ip-address] [details]</td>
<td>Displays information about BFD on the specified session on an interface. Use the optional <strong>fabricpath</strong> keyword to display information about the specific fabricpath neighbor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Command**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch# show bfd neighbors [dest-sys-id]dest-sys-id-value</td>
<td>Displays information about a specific FabricPath neighbor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more details, see the *Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Switch Interfaces Command Reference*.

## Configuration Examples for BFD

This example shows how to configure BFD for OSPFv2 on Ethernet 2/1, using the default BFD session parameters:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature bfd
switch(config)# feature ospf
switch(config)# router ospf Test1
switch(config-router)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# ip ospf bfd
switch(config-if)# no shutdown
```

This example shows how to configure BFD for all EIGRP interfaces, using the default BFD session parameters:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature bfd
switch(config)# feature eigrp
switch(config)# bfd interval 250 min_rx 250 multiplier 4
switch(config)# router eigrp Test2
switch(config-router)# bfd
```

## Related Documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topic</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BFD commands</td>
<td>See the <em>Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Unicast Routing Command Reference, Release 6.x</em>, for more information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Related Standards

These industry standards cover Bidirectional Forwarding Detection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RFC</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RFC 5880</td>
<td><em>Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFC 5881</td>
<td><em>BFD for IPv4 and IPv6 (Single Hop)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Port Channels

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Information About Port Channels, on page 95
- Configuring Port Channels, on page 103
- Verifying Port Channel Configuration, on page 118
- Verifying the Load-Balancing Outgoing Port ID, on page 119
- Feature History for Configuring Port Channels, on page 120

Information About Port Channels

A port channel bundles individual interfaces into a group to provide increased bandwidth and redundancy. Port channeling also load balances traffic across these physical interfaces. The port channel stays operational as long as at least one physical interface within the port channel is operational.

You create a port channel by bundling compatible interfaces. You can configure and run either static port channels or port channels running the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).

Any configuration changes that you apply to the port channel are applied to each member interface of that port channel. For example, if you configure Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) parameters on the port channel, Cisco NX-OS applies those parameters to each interface in the port channel.

You can use static port channels, with no associated protocol, for a simplified configuration. For more efficient use of the port channel, you can use the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP), which is defined in IEEE 802.3ad. When you use LACP, the link passes protocol packets.

Related Topics

- LACP Overview, on page 100

Understanding Port Channels

Using port channels, Cisco NX-OS provides wider bandwidth, redundancy, and load balancing across the channels.

You can collect ports into a static port channel or you can enable the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP). Configuring port channels with LACP requires slightly different steps than configuring static port channels. For information on port channel configuration limits, see the Verified Scalability document for your platform. For more information about load balancing, see Load Balancing Using Port Channels, on page 98.
Cisco NX-OS does not support Port Aggregation Protocol (PAgP) for port channels.

A port channel bundles individual links into a channel group to create a single logical link that provides the aggregate bandwidth of several physical links. If a member port within a port channel fails, traffic previously carried over the failed link switches to the remaining member ports within the port channel.

Each port can be in only one port channel. All the ports in a port channel must be compatible; they must use the same speed and operate in full-duplex mode. When you are running static port channels without LACP, the individual links are all in the on channel mode; you cannot change this mode without enabling LACP.

You cannot change the mode from ON to Active or from ON to Passive.

You can create a port channel directly by creating the port-channel interface, or you can create a channel group that acts to aggregate individual ports into a bundle. When you associate an interface with a channel group, Cisco NX-OS creates a matching port channel automatically if the port channel does not already exist. You can also create the port channel first. In this instance, Cisco NX-OS creates an empty channel group with the same channel number as the port channel and takes the default configuration.

A port channel is operationally up when at least one of the member ports is up and that port’s status is channeling. The port channel is operationally down when all member ports are operationally down.

Compatibility Requirements

When you add an interface to a port channel group, Cisco NX-OS checks certain interface attributes to ensure that the interface is compatible with the channel group. Cisco NX-OS also checks a number of operational attributes for an interface before allowing that interface to participate in the port-channel aggregation.

The compatibility check includes the following operational attributes:

- Port mode
- Access VLAN
- Trunk native VLAN
- Allowed VLAN list
- Speed
- 802.3x flow control setting
- MTU
  The Cisco Nexus device only supports system level MTU. This attribute cannot be changed on an individual port basis.
- Broadcast/Unicast/Multicast Storm Control setting
- Priority-Flow-Control
• Untagged CoS

Use the `show port-channel compatibility-parameters` command to see the full list of compatibility checks that Cisco NX-OS uses.

You can only add interfaces configured with the channel mode set to on to static port channels. You can also only add interfaces configured with the channel mode as active or passive to port channels that are running LACP. You can configure these attributes on an individual member port.

When the interface joins a port channel, the following individual parameters are replaced with the values on the port channel:

• Bandwidth
• MAC address
• Spanning Tree Protocol

The following interface parameters remain unaffected when the interface joins a port channel:

• Description
• CDP
• LACP port priority
• Debounce

After you enable forcing a port to be added to a channel group by entering the `channel-group force` command, the following two conditions occur:

• When an interface joins a port channel, the following parameters are removed and they are operationally replaced with the values on the port channel; however, this change will not be reflected in the running configuration for the interface:
  • QoS
  • Bandwidth
  • Delay
  • STP
  • Service policy
  • ACLs

• When an interface joins or leaves a port channel, the following parameters remain unaffected:
  • Beacon
  • Description
  • CDP
  • LACP port priority
  • Debounce
  • UDLD
Load Balancing Using Port Channels

Cisco NX-OS load balances traffic across all operational interfaces in a port channel by reducing part of the binary pattern formed from the addresses in the frame to a numerical value that selects one of the links in the channel. Port channels provide load balancing by default.

The basic configuration uses the following criteria to select the link:

- For a Layer 2 frame, it uses the source and destination MAC addresses.
- For a Layer 3 frame, it uses the source and destination MAC addresses and the source and destination IP addresses.
- For a Layer 4 frame, it uses the source and destination MAC addresses and the source and destination IP addresses.

You can configure the switch to use one of the following methods (see the following table for more details) to load balance across the port channel:

- Destination MAC address
- Source MAC address
- Source and destination MAC address
- Destination IP address
- Source IP address
- Source and destination IP address
- Destination TCP/UDP port number
- Source TCP/UDP port number
- Source and destination TCP/UDP port number

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Layer 2 Criteria</th>
<th>Layer 3 Criteria</th>
<th>Layer 4 Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Destination MAC</td>
<td>Destination MAC</td>
<td>Destination MAC</td>
<td>Destination MAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source MAC</td>
<td>Source MAC</td>
<td>Source MAC</td>
<td>Source MAC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: You have the option to include the source and destination port number for the Layer 4 frame.
Fabric Extenders are not configurable individually. Fabric extender configurations are defined on the Cisco Nexus device. In the case of the port-channel load balancing protocol, the table below illustrates which port-channel load balancing option is automatically configured on the fabric extender modules as a result of the configuration performed on the Cisco Nexus device.

The following table shows the criteria used for each configuration:

### Table 4: Port channel Load-Balancing Criteria for the Cisco Nexus 2232 and Cisco Nexus 2248 Fabric Extenders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Layer 2 Criteria</th>
<th>Layer 3 Criteria</th>
<th>Layer 4 Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination IP</td>
<td>Destination MAC</td>
<td>Destination MAC, destination IP</td>
<td>Destination MAC, destination IP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source IP</td>
<td>Source MAC</td>
<td>Source MAC, source IP</td>
<td>Source MAC, source IP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source and destination IP</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC, source and destination IP</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC, source and destination IP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination TCP/UDP port</td>
<td>Destination MAC</td>
<td>Destination MAC, destination IP</td>
<td>Destination MAC, destination IP, destination port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source TCP/UDP port</td>
<td>Source MAC</td>
<td>Source MAC, source IP</td>
<td>Source MAC, source IP, source port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source and destination TCP/UDP port</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC, source and destination IP</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC, source and destination IP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fabric Extenders are not configurable individually. Fabric extender configurations are defined on the Cisco Nexus device. In the case of the port-channel load balancing protocol, the table below illustrates which port-channel load balancing option is automatically configured on the fabric extender modules as a result of the configuration performed on the Cisco Nexus device.

The following table shows the criteria used for each configuration:

### Table 4: Port channel Load-Balancing Criteria for the Cisco Nexus 2232 and Cisco Nexus 2248 Fabric Extenders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Layer 2 Criteria</th>
<th>Layer 3 Criteria</th>
<th>Layer 4 Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination IP</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC, and source and destination IP</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC, and source and destination IP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source IP</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC, and source and destination IP</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC, and source and destination IP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source and destination IP</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC, and source and destination IP</td>
<td>Source and destination MAC, and source and destination IP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Layer 4 Criteria | Layer 3 Criteria | Layer 2 Criteria | Configuration
---|---|---|---
Source and destination MAC, source and destination IP | Source and destination MAC, source and destination IP, and source and destination port | Source and destination MAC | Source and destination TCP/UDP port
Source and destination MAC, source and destination IP | Source and destination MAC, source and destination IP, and source and destination port | Source and destination MAC | Source and destination TCP/UDP port
Source and destination MAC, source and destination IP | Source and destination MAC, source and destination IP, and source and destination port | Source and destination MAC | Source and destination TCP/UDP port

Use the option that provides the balance criteria with the greatest variety in your configuration. For example, if the traffic on a port channel is going only to a single MAC address and you use the destination MAC address as the basis of port-channel load balancing, the port channel always chooses the same link in that port channel; using source addresses or IP addresses might result in better load balancing.

Note
The hardware multicast hw-hash command is not supported on Cisco Nexus 3500 Series switches. It is recommended not to configure this command on these switches.

**Understanding LACP**

**LACP Overview**

Note
You must enable the LACP feature before you can configure and use LACP functions.

The following figure shows how individual links can be combined into LACP port channels and channel groups as well as function as individual links.

*Figure 8: Individual Links Combined into a Port Channel*

With LACP, just like with static port channels, you can bundle up to 16 interfaces in a channel group.
When you delete the port channel, Cisco NX-OS automatically deletes the associated channel group. All member interfaces revert to their previous configuration.

You cannot disable LACP while any LACP configurations are present.

**LACP ID Parameters**

LACP uses the following parameters:

- LACP system priority—Each system that runs LACP has an LACP system priority value. You can accept the default value of 32768 for this parameter, or you can configure a value between 1 and 65535. LACP uses the system priority with the MAC address to form the system ID and also uses the system priority during negotiation with other devices. A higher system priority value means a lower priority.

The LACP system ID is the combination of the LACP system priority value and the MAC address.

- LACP port priority—Each port configured to use LACP has an LACP port priority. You can accept the default value of 32768 for the LACP port priority, or you can configure a value between 1 and 65535. LACP uses the port priority with the port number to form the port identifier. LACP uses the port priority to decide which ports should be put in standby mode when there is a limitation that prevents all compatible ports from aggregating and which ports should be put into active mode. A higher port priority value means a lower priority for LACP. You can configure the port priority so that specified ports have a lower priority for LACP and are most likely to be chosen as active links, rather than hot-standby links.

- LACP administrative key—LACP automatically configures an administrative key value equal to the channel-group number on each port configured to use LACP. The administrative key defines the ability of a port to aggregate with other ports. A port’s ability to aggregate with other ports is determined by these factors:
  - Port physical characteristics, such as the data rate, the duplex capability, and the point-to-point or shared medium state
  - Configuration restrictions that you establish

**Channel Modes**

Individual interfaces in port channels are configured with channel modes. When you run static port channels, with no protocol, the channel mode is always set to on. After you enable LACP globally on the device, you enable LACP for each channel by setting the channel mode for each interface to active or passive. You can configure either channel mode for individual links in the LACP channel group.

You must enable LACP globally before you can configure an interface in either the active or passive channel mode.

The following table describes the channel modes.
Table 5: Channel Modes for Individual Links in a Port Channel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Channel Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>passive</td>
<td>LACP mode that places a port into a passive negotiating state, in which the port responds to LACP packets that it receives but does not initiate LACP negotiation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>active</td>
<td>LACP mode that places a port into an active negotiating state, in which the port initiates negotiations with other ports by sending LACP packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>All static port channels, that is, that are not running LACP, remain in this mode. If you attempt to change the channel mode to active or passive before enabling LACP, the device returns an error message. You enable LACP on each channel by configuring the interface in that channel for the channel mode as either active or passive. When an LACP attempts to negotiate with an interface in the on state, it does not receive any LACP packets and becomes an individual link with that interface; it does not join the LACP channel group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both the passive and active modes allow LACP to negotiate between ports to determine if they can form a port channel, based on criteria such as the port speed and the trunking state. The passive mode is useful when you do not know whether the remote system, or partner, supports LACP.

Ports can form an LACP port channel when they are in different LACP modes as long as the modes are compatible as in the following examples:

- A port in active mode can form a port channel successfully with another port that is in active mode.
- A port in active mode can form a port channel with another port in passive mode.
- A port in passive mode cannot form a port channel with another port that is also in passive mode because neither port will initiate negotiation.
- A port in on mode is not running LACP.

**LACP Marker Responders**

Using port channels, data traffic may be dynamically redistributed due to either a link failure or load balancing. LACP uses the Marker Protocol to ensure that frames are not duplicated or reordered because of this redistribution. Cisco NX-OS supports only Marker Responders.

**LACP-Enabled and Static Port Channel Differences**

The following table provides a brief summary of major differences between port channels with LACP enabled and static port channels. For information about the maximum configuration limits, see the *Verified Scalability* document for your device.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configurations</th>
<th>Port Channels with LACP Enabled</th>
<th>Static Port Channels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Protocol applied</td>
<td>Enable globally.</td>
<td>Not applicable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Port Channels

#### Default Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Port channel</td>
<td>Admin up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LACP Port-Channel Min Links

A port channel aggregates similar ports to provide increased bandwidth in a single manageable interface.

The introduction of the minimum links feature further refines LACP port-channel operation and provides increased bandwidth in one manageable interface.

The LACP port-channel minimum links feature does the following:

- Configures the minimum number of ports that must be linked up and bundled in the LACP port channel.
- Prevents the low-bandwidth LACP port channel from becoming active.
- Causes the LACP port channel to become inactive if there are few active members ports to supply the required minimum bandwidth.

The minimum links feature works only with LACP port channels. However, the device allows you to configure this feature in non-LACP port channels, but the feature is not operational.

Creating a Port Channel

You can create a port channel before creating a channel group. Cisco NX-OS automatically creates the associated channel group.

If you want LACP-based port channels, you need to enable LACP.
### Configuring Port Channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# interface port-channel channel-number</td>
<td>Specifies the port-channel interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode. The range is from 1 to 4096. Cisco NX-OS automatically creates the channel group if it does not already exist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# no interface port-channel channel-number</td>
<td>Removes the port channel and deletes the associated channel group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to create a port channel:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch (config)# interface port-channel 1
```

### Adding a Port to a Port Channel

You can add a port to a new channel group or to a channel group that already contains ports. Cisco NX-OS creates the port channel associated with this channel group if the port channel does not already exist.

#### Note

If you want LACP-based port channels, you need to enable LACP.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# interface type slot/port</td>
<td>Specifies the interface that you want to add to a channel group and enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If this is a 10G breakout port, the <code>slot/port</code> syntax is <code>QSFP-module/port</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# switchport mode trunk</td>
<td>Configures the interface as a trunk port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-if)# switchport trunk {allowed vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>native vlan vlan-id}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Load Balancing Using Port Channels

You can configure the load-balancing algorithm for port channels that applies to the entire device.

**Note**

If you want LACP-based port channels, you need to enable LACP.

**Note**

For load-balancing FC traffic across SAN PO members in Nexus 5672UP-16G switch, the `port-channel load-balance ethernet` command is not needed. The load-balancing happens by default.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>switch# configure terminal</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the load-balancing algorithm for the device. The range depends on the device. The default is <code>source-dest-ip</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`switch(config)# port-channel load-balance ethernet {destination-ip</td>
<td>destination-mac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• source-dest-ip-only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• source-dest-port-only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• source-dest-ip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• source-dest-port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• source-dest-ip-gre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Cisco Nexus 5500 Platform switches support 8 hash polynomials that can be used for compression on the hash-parameters. Depending on variations in the hash parameters for egress traffic flows from a port channel, different polynomials could provide different load distribution results. The default hash polynomial is CRC8a. The variable can be configured as follows:

- CRC8a
- CRC8b
- CRC8c
- CRC8d
- CRC8e
- CRC8f
- CRC8g

Step 3  
(Optional) switch(config)# no port-channel load-balance ethernet  
Restores the default load-balancing algorithm of source-dest-ip.

Step 4  
(Optional) switch# show port-channel load-balance  
Displays the port-channel load-balancing algorithm.

Example

This example shows how to configure source IP load balancing for port channels:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch (config)# port-channel load-balance ethernet source-ip
```
Configuring Hardware Hashing for Multicast Traffic

By default, ingress multicast traffic on any port in the switch selects a particular port channel member to egress the traffic. You can configure hardware hashing for multicast traffic to reduce potential bandwidth issues and to provide effective load balancing of the ingress multicast traffic. Use the `hardware multicast hw-hash` command to enable hardware hashing. To restore the default, use the `no hardware multicast hw-hash` command.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# interface port-channel channel-number</td>
<td>Selects the port channel and enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# [no] hardware multicast hw-hash</td>
<td>Configures hardware hashing for the specified port channel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to configure hardware hashing on a port channel:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch (config)# interface port-channel 21
switch(config-if)# hardware multicast hw-hash
```

This example shows how to remove hardware hashing from a port channel:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch (config)# interface port-channel 21
switch(config-if)# no hardware multicast hw-hash
```

Enabling LACP

LACP is disabled by default; you must enable LACP before you begin LACP configuration. You cannot disable LACP while any LACP configuration is present.

LACP learns the capabilities of LAN port groups dynamically and informs the other LAN ports. Once LACP identifies correctly matched Ethernet links, it facilitates grouping the links into an port channel. The port channel is then added to the spanning tree as a single bridge port.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# feature lacp</td>
<td>Enables LACP on the switch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring the Channel Mode for a Port

You can configure the channel mode for each individual link in the LACP port channel as active or passive. This channel configuration mode allows the link to operate with LACP.

When you configure port channels with no associated protocol, all interfaces on both sides of the link remain in the on channel mode.

#### Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the LACP feature.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# interface type slot/port</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong>: If this is a 10G breakout port, the <code>slot/port</code> syntax is <code>QSFP-module/port</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# channel-group channel-number [force] [mode {on</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **force**: Specifies that the LAN port be forcefully added to the channel group.
- **mode**: Specifies the port channel mode of the interface.
- **active**: Specifies that when you enable LACP, this command enables LACP on the specified interface. The interface is in an active negotiating state in which the port initiates...
Configuring LACP Port-Channel Minimum Links

You can configure the LACP minimum links feature. Although minimum links work only in LACP, you can enter the CLI commands for this feature for non-LACP port channels, but these commands are nonoperational.

Before you begin

Ensure that you are in the correct port-channel interface.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# interface port-channel number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Port Channels

**Configuring the LACP Port-Channel MaxBundle**

You can configure the LACP min-links feature. Although min-links and max-bundles work only in LACP, you can enter the CLI commands for these features for non-LACP port channels, but these commands are non-operational.

#### Before you begin

Ensure that you are in the correct port-channel interface.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1  switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2  switch(config)# interface port-channel &lt;number&gt;</td>
<td>Specifies the interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Step 3 | switch(config-if)# lACP max-bundle number | Specifies the port-channel interface to configure max-bundle, and enters the interface configuration mode. The default value for the port-channel max-bundle is 16. The allowed range is from 1 to 16. 

Note | Even if the default value is 16, the number of active members in a port channel is the minimum of the pc_max_links_config and pc_max_active_members that is allowed in the port channel. The min-links and max-bundle features work well when both ends of the port-channel are configured with the same value. Mismatched min/max-bundle values might result in port flap, traffic drops, and unnecessary port suspension. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# show running config interface port-channel number</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to configure the port channel interface max-bundle on module 3:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# lACP max-bundle 3
```

### Configuring the LACP Fast Timer Rate

You can change the LACP timer rate to modify the duration of the LACP timeout. Use the `lACP rate` command to set the rate at which LACP control packets are sent to an LACP-supported interface. You can change the timeout rate from the default rate (30 seconds) to the fast rate (1 second). This command is supported only on LACP-enabled interfaces.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you have enabled the LACP feature.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command or Action</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the interface to configure and enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)# <strong>interface type slot/port</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>Configures the fast rate (one second) at which LACP control packets are sent to an LACP-supported interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config-if)# <strong>lacp rate fast</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to configure the LACP fast rate on Ethernet interface 1/4:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# lacp rate fast
```

This example shows how to restore the LACP default rate (30 seconds) on Ethernet interface 1/4.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# no lacp rate fast
```

**Configuring the LACP Short-timeout**

You can change the LACP Short-timeout value for the lacp rate fast command to modify the duration of the LACP Fast Rate timeout. Use the `lacp rate fast` command to set the fast rate at which LACP control packets are sent to an LACP-supported interface. You can change the short timeout value from 15 seconds (default timeout) to 3 seconds (IEEE802.3ad recommended standard).

---

**Note**

The `lacp short-timeout` command is supported only on LACP-enabled interfaces.

BFD feature is not supported, when LACP Short-timeout is configured.

LACP rate fast is not recommended on vPC multichassis Etherchannel trunk (MCT) ports.

---

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you have enabled the LACP Rate Fast feature.

**Procedure**

```
Step 1  switch# configure terminal
```
Enters global configuration mode.

### Step 2

```
switch(config)# lacp short-timeout
```

Configures the short-timeout value for LACP fast rate at which LACP control packets are sent to an LACP-supported interface. Valid range value is from 3 to 15 seconds. The default short-timeout value is 15 seconds.

**Note** The LACP Short-timeout default configuration is not displayed in the running configuration.

### Step 3

(Optional) `switch(config)# show run | include lacp`

Displays the LACP configuration on an interface.

---

**Example**

This example shows how to configure the LACP short-timeout value of 3 seconds for LACP fast rate:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)#
```

This example shows how to restore the LACP short-timeout default timeout (15 seconds) for LACP fast rate:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no lacp short-timeout
```

---

**Procedure to revert when BFD Feature and LACP Short-timeout are configured Together**

Do not enable BFD feature along with the LACP Short-timeout configuration. This configuration is not supported. You must wait for 30 seconds after configuring `lacp short-timeout`. The command prompts error when you attempt to enable BFD feature.

If you have enabled the BFD feature along with the LACP short-timeout, you must do the following procedure to exit this configuration:

**Procedure**

### Step 1

Use the `no lacp short-timeout` command to disable the lacp short-timeout.

### Step 2

Use the `no feature BFD` command to disable the feature BFD.

---

**Configuring the LACP System Priority and System ID**

The LACP system ID is the combination of the LACP system priority value and the MAC address.
Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the LACP feature.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# lACP system-priority priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configures the system priority for use with LACP. Valid values are 1 through 65535, and higher numbers have lower priority. The default value is 32768.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch# show lACP system-identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Displays the LACP system identifier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to set the LACP system priority to 2500:

```plaintext
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# lACP system-priority 2500
```

Configuring the LACP Port Priority

You can configure each link in the LACP port channel for the port priority.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the LACP feature.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# interface type slot/port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specifies the interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>switch(config-if)# lACP port-priority priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configures the port priority for use with LACP. Valid values are 1 through 65535, and higher numbers have lower priority. The default value is 32768.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example
This example shows how to set the LACP port priority for Ethernet interface 1/4 to 40000:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch (config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# lacp port priority 40000
```

## Disabling LACP Graceful Convergence

### Before you begin
- Enable the LACP feature.
- Confirm that the port channel is in the administratively down state.
- Ensure that you are in the correct VDC. To switch to the correct VDC, enter the `switchto vdc` command.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td><code>configure terminal</code></td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|   | **Example:** switch# configure terminal  
   | switch(config)# | |
| Step 2 | `interface port-channel number` | Specifies the port channel interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode. |
|   | **Example:** switch(config)# interface port-channel 1  
   | switch(config)# | |
| Step 3 | Required: `shutdown` | Administratively shuts down the port channel. |
|   | **Example:** switch(config-if)# shutdown  
   | switch(config-if)# | |
| Step 4 | Required: `no lacp graceful-convergence` | Disables LACP graceful convergence on the specified port channel. |
|   | **Example:** switch(config-if)# no lacp graceful-convergence  
   | switch(config-if)# | |
| Step 5 | Required: `no shutdown` | Administratively brings the port channel up. |
|   | **Example:** switch(config-if)# no shutdown  
   | switch(config-if)# | |
### Purpose

**Command or Action**

| Step 6 | (Optional) `copy running-config startup-config`  
**Example:**  
`switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config` |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

The following example disables LACP graceful convergence on a port channel:

```plaintext
switch# configure terminal  
switch(config) # interface port-channel 1  
switch(config-if) # shutdown  
switch(config-if) # no lacp graceful-convergence  
switch(config-if) # no shutdown  
switch(config-if) #
```

### Reenabling LACP Graceful Convergence

**Before you begin**

- Enable the LACP feature.
- Confirm that the port channel is in the administratively down state.
- Ensure that you are in the correct VDC. To switch to the correct VDC, enter the `switchto vdc` command.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Step 1** `configure terminal`  
**Example:**  
`switch# configure terminal  
switch(config)#` | Enters global configuration mode. |
| **Step 2** `interface port-channel number`  
**Example:**  
`switch(config)# interface port-channel 1  
switch(config) #` | Specifies the port channel interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode. |
| **Step 3** Required: `shutdown`  
**Example:**  
`switch(config-if)# shutdown  
switch(config-if) #` | Administratively shuts down the port channel. |
| **Step 4** Required: `lacp graceful-convergence`  
**Example:** | Enables LACP graceful convergence on the specified port channel. |
### Configuring Port Channels

#### Verifying Port Channel Configuration

Use the following command to verify the port channel configuration information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show interface port channel channel-number</td>
<td>Displays the status of a port channel interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show feature</td>
<td>Displays enabled features.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show resource</td>
<td>Displays the number of resources currently available in the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show lacp {counters</td>
<td>interface type slot/port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show port-channel compatibility-parameters</td>
<td>Displays the parameters that must be the same among the member ports in order to join a port channel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show port-channel database [interface port-channel channel-number]</td>
<td>Displays the aggregation state for one or more port-channel interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show port-channel summary</td>
<td>Displays a summary for the port channel interfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Example**

The following example disables LACP graceful convergence on a port channel:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # interface port-channel 1
switch(config-if) # shutdown
switch(config-if) # lacp graceful-convergence
switch(config-if) # no shutdown
```

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| switch(config-if)# lACP  
glaceful-convergence  
switch(config-if) # | |  
**Step 5**  
**Required:** no shutdown  
**Example:**  
switch(config-if)# no shutdown  
switch(config-if) #  
Administratively brings the port channel up.  
|  
|  
| (Optional) copy running-config startup-config  
**Example:**  
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config | Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration. |
### Configuring Port Channels

**Verifying the Load-Balancing Outgoing Port ID**

#### Command Guidelines

The `show port-channel load-balance` command allows you to verify which ports a given frame is hashed to on a port channel. You need to specify the VLAN and the destination MAC in order to get accurate results.

#### Note

Certain traffic flows are not subject to hashing such as when there is a single port in a port-channel.

To display the load-balancing outgoing port ID, perform one of the tasks:

#### Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show port-channel load-balance forwarding-path interface port-channel port-channel-id vlan vlan-id dst-ip src-ip dst-mac src-mac l4-src-port port-id l4-dst-port port-id</code></td>
<td>Displays the outgoing port ID.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Example

This example shows how to display the load balancing outgoing port ID:

```
switch# show port-channel load-balance forwarding-path interface port-channel 10 vlan 1 dst-ip 1.225.225.225 src-ip 1.1.10.10 src-mac aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff l4-src-port 0 l4-dst-port 1
Missing params will be substituted by 0's. Load-balance Algorithm on switch: source-dest-port crc8_hash:204 Outgoing port id: Ethernet 1/1 Param(s) used to calculate load balance:
dst-port: 0
crc8: 0
dst-ip: 1.225.225.225
src-ip: 1.1.10.10
```
Feature History for Configuring Port Channels

Table 8: Feature History for Configuring Port Channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Name</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Feature Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Min Links</td>
<td>6.0(2)N1(2)</td>
<td>This feature was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LACP Short-timeout</td>
<td>7.3(0)N1(1)</td>
<td>This feature was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Interfaces Configuration Guide, Release 6.x
Configuring Enhanced Virtual Port Channels

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Information About Enhanced vPCs, on page 121
- Licensing Requirements for Enhanced vPC, on page 123
- Configuring Enhanced vPCs, on page 124
- Verifying Enhanced vPCs, on page 124
- Enhanced vPC Example Configuration, on page 128

Information About Enhanced vPCs

Enhanced Virtual Port Channels Overview

The virtual port channel (vPC) feature allows the dual homed connection of a host to two fabric extenders (FEXs) or a dual homed connection of a FEX to two switches. The enhanced vPC feature, or two-layer vPC, allows both dual homing topologies to be combined simultaneously, as shown in the following figure:

Figure 9: Dual Homing Topology
With enhanced vPCs, all available paths from the hosts to the FEXs and from the FEXs to the switches are active and carry Ethernet traffic, maximizing the available bandwidth and providing redundancy at both levels.

### Supported Platforms and Topologies

#### Supported Platforms

Enhanced vPC is supported on Cisco Nexus devices.

Any Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender can be used with Enhanced vPC.

Enhanced vPC is compatible with Layer 3 features on the switch.

#### Supported and Unsupported Topologies

Enhanced vPC supports the following topologies:

- A single homed server connected to a single FEX
- A dual homed server connected by a port channel to a single FEX
- A dual homed server connected by a port channel to a pair of FEXs
  
  This topology allows connection to any two FEXs that are connected to the same pair of switches in a vPC domain. Static port channel and Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)-based port channel are supported.

- A dual homed server connected by Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) and port channel to a pair of FEXs
- A dual homed server connected by active/standby NIC teaming to a pair of FEXs

Enhanced vPC does not support the following topologies:

- A dual homed server connected to a pair of FEXs that connect to a single switch
  
  Although this topology becomes a functioning system when one switch has failed, it is not recommended in normal operation.

- A multi-homed server connected by a port channel to more than two FEXs
  
  This topology results in increased complexity with little benefit.

- You cannot have a link for non-vPC traffic in parallel with a vPC topology. This can cause errors with the traffic forwarding logic resulting in duplicate or missed packets.

### Enhanced vPC Scalability

The scalability of enhanced vPC is similar to that of the dual homed FEX topology.

Each Cisco Nexus device supports up to 24 FEXs with Layer 2 configuration or Layer 3 configuration. In a dual homed FEX topology, such as that in enhanced vPC, each FEX is managed by two switches, so the pair together can support 24 FEXs.
Enhanced vPC Failure Response

The enhanced vPC topology provides a high level of resilience to the failure of system components and links as described in the following scenarios:

- **Failure of One or More Port Channel Member Links**
  When one member link of a port channel fails, the traffic flow is moved to the remaining port channel member links. If all member links of a port channel fail, the traffic flow is redirected to the remaining port channel of the vPC.

- **Failure of One FEX**
  When one FEX fails, the traffic flow from all dual homed hosts is moved to the remaining FEX.

- **Failure of One Switch**
  When one switch fails, the traffic flow from all dual homed FEXs is moved to the remaining switch. Traffic from the hosts is unaffected.

- **Failure of Both Uplinks from a Single FEX**
  When both uplinks from one FEX fails, the FEX shuts down its host ports, and the traffic flow from all dual homed hosts is moved to the other FEX.

- **Failure of the vPC Peer Link**
  When the vPC secondary switch detects the failure of the peer link, it checks the status of the primary switch by the peer-keepalive link. If the primary switch is unresponsive, the secondary switch maintains all traffic flows as before. If the primary switch is active, the secondary switch shuts down its interfaces to the FEXs, and the traffic flow from all dual homed FEXs is moved to the primary switch. Ethernet traffic from the hosts is unaffected in either case.

  If the secondary switch carries FCoE traffic and shuts down its interfaces to the FEXs, it also shuts down all virtual Fibre Channel (vFC) interfaces that are bound to the FEX host ports. In this case, the hosts must use multipathing to move SAN traffic to the remaining vFC interface.

- **Failure of the vPC Peer-Keepalive Link**
  A failure of the vPC peer-keepalive link by itself does not affect the traffic flow.

Licensing Requirements for Enhanced vPC

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>License Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cisco NX-OS</td>
<td>This feature does not require a license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring Enhanced vPCs

Overview of Configuration Steps for Enhanced vPC

An enhanced vPC configuration consists of a combination of two standard vPC configurations: the dual homed connection of a host to two FEXs and the dual homed connection of a FEX to two switches. The required configuration tasks are listed here, but the detailed procedures for those two standard configurations are presented in the “Configuring Virtual Port Channels” chapter of this document.

To configure enhanced vPC, perform the following steps.

Note

- In procedures where the configuration must be repeated on both switches, the configuration synchronization (config-sync) feature allows you to configure one switch and have the configuration automatically synchronized to the peer switch. For more information about configuration synchronization, see the Operations Guide for your device.
- You cannot configure non-vPC interfaces across host ports on two different FEXs.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Enable the vPC and LACP features on each switch.
- **Step 2** Create required VLANs on each switch.
- **Step 3** Assign a vPC domain ID and configure the vPC peer-keepalive link on each switch.
- **Step 4** Configure the vPC peer link on each switch.
- **Step 5** Configure port channels from the first FEX to each switch.
- **Step 6** Configure port channels from the second FEX to each switch.
- **Step 7** If the enhanced vPC must accommodate FCoE traffic, associate the first FEX to one switch, and then associate the second FEX to the other switch.

See “Configuring FCoE over Enhanced vPC” in the Fibre Channel over Ethernet Configuration Guide for your device.

- **Step 8** Configure a host port channel on each FEX.

Verifying Enhanced vPCs

Verifying the Enhanced vPC Configuration

Before bringing up a vPC, the two peer switches in the same vPC domain exchange configuration information to verify that both switches have compatible configurations for a vPC topology. Depending on the severity
of the impact of possible mismatched configurations, some configuration parameters are considered as Type 1 consistency check parameters while others are considered as Type 2.

When a mismatch in Type 1 parameters is found, both peer switches suspend VLANs on the vPC ports. When a mismatch in Type 2 parameters is found, a warning syslog message is generated, but the vPC remains up and running.

Note

Enhanced vPCs do not support the graceful consistency check.

For enhanced vPCs, the consistency verification for global configuration parameters is the same as for a dual homed FEX topology, and is described in the documentation for dual homed FEX. In addition to the global consistency verification, enhanced vPCs require interface level verification using tasks described in this section.

Use the following commands to verify the enhanced vPC configuration and consistency:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch# show feature</td>
<td>Displays whether vPC is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show running-config vpc</td>
<td>Displays running configuration information for vPCs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show vpc brief</td>
<td>Displays brief information on the vPCs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)# show vpc consistency-parameters global</td>
<td>Displays the status of global vPC parameters that must be consistent across all vPC interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch(config)# show vpc consistency-parameters interface port-channel channel-number</td>
<td>Displays the status of specific port channels that must be consistent across vPC devices.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For detailed information about the fields in the output of these commands, see the command reference for your device.

---

**Verifying the Consistency of Port Channel Numbers**

For enhanced vPCs, both switches must use the same port channel number for the dual homed connection to a FEX. If different port channel numbers are used, the port channel and its member ports are suspended on both switches.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>show running-config interface type/slot[, type/slot[, ...]]</td>
<td>Displays the configuration of the specified list of port channel member ports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example:</td>
<td>switch-1# show running-config interface Ethernet110/1/1, Ethernet111/1/1</td>
<td>Enter this command on both peer switches and compare the reported channel-group numbers to verify that they match between switches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Step 2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show interface type/slot</td>
<td>Displays the status and configuration of the specified port channel member port.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Verifying Common Port Channel Members

The port channel from a FEX to the switch pair is up and operational when there is at least one common port channel member between the two switches. Any FEX interfaces that are assigned to the port channel only on one switch will be suspended.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch-1# show interface Ethernet10/1/1</td>
<td>Enter this command on both peer switches and verify the status of the ports.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to verify the consistency of the port channel numbering between the two switches. In this example, the port channel numbering is inconsistent and the member ports are suspended:

```
switch-1# show running-config interface Ethernet10/1/1, Ethernet11/1/1
!Command: show running-config interface Ethernet10/1/1, Ethernet11/1/1
!Time: Sun Aug 28 03:38:23 2011
version 5.1(3)N1(1)
interface Ethernet10/1/1
channel-group 102
interface Ethernet11/1/1
channel-group 102
switch-2# show running-config interface Ethernet10/1/1, Ethernet11/1/1
!Command: show running-config interface Ethernet10/1/1, Ethernet11/1/1
!Time: Sun Aug 28 03:38:23 2011
version 5.1(3)N1(1)
interface Ethernet10/1/1
channel-group 101
interface Ethernet11/1/1
channel-group 101
switch-1# show interface Ethernet10/1/1
Ethernet10/1/1 is down (suspended by vpc)
  Hardware: 10/1000 Ethernet, address: 7081.0500.2402 (bia 7081.0500.2402)
  MTU 1500 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit, DLY 10 usec
  [...] 
switch-2# show interface Ethernet11/1/1
Ethernet11/1/1 is down (suspended by vpc)
  Hardware: 10/1000 Ethernet, address: 7081.0500.2402 (bia 7081.0500.2402)
  MTU 1500 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit, DLY 10 usec
  [...] 
```
### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>show port-channel summary</strong></td>
<td>Displays a summary of the port channel interfaces.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>switch-1# show port-channel summary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>(Optional) Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>show interface type/slot</strong></td>
<td>Displays the status and configuration of the specified interface.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>switch-1# show interface ethernet 111/1/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to verify the common member ports of the vPC. In this example, the vPC is configured with one port channel member that is not common to both switches. That member port is shown as shut down, and further investigation shows that the member is suspended by the vPC.

In this part of the session, the port channel is configured on each switch, with an extra port on the first switch:

```plaintext
switch-1(config)# interface ethernet 110/1/3, ethernet 111/1/3
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 101
switch-1(config-if)# interface port-channel 101
switch-1(config-if)# switchport access vlan 20

switch-2(config)# interface ethernet 110/1/3
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 101
switch-2(config-if)# interface port-channel 101
switch-2(config-if)# switchport access vlan 20
```

In this part of the session, the extra port is shown to be in the down state, and a display of the port details shows that the port is suspended by the vPC:

```plaintext
switch-1# show port-channel summary
Flags:  D - Down  P - Up in port-channel (members)
I - Individual  H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
s - Suspended  r - Module-removed
S - Switched  R - Routed
U - Up (port-channel)
M - Not in use. Min-links not met

Group Port- Type Protocol Member Ports
------------------------
1  Po1(SU)  Eth LACP  Eth1/1(P)  Eth1/2(P)
[...]
101 Po101(SU) Eth NONE  Eth110/1/3(P)  Eth111/1/3(D)

switch-1# show interface ethernet 111/1/3
Ethernet111/1/3 is down (suspended by vpc)
Hardware: 100/1000 Ethernet, address: 7081.0500.2582 (bia 7081.0500.2582)
MTU 1500 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit, DLY 10 usec
reliability 255/255, txload 1/255, rxload 1/255
```
Verifying Interface Level Consistency for Enhanced vPCs

For enhanced vPCs, you must ensure consistency of the port mode and the shared VLAN in the port channel interface configuration.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> show vpc consistency-parameters port-channel channel-number</td>
<td>For the specified port channel, displays the status information that must be consistent across vPC devices.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to display a comparison of the interface configuration across two peers for a vPC. In this case, VLAN 10 is allowed on both peers, but the port mode is mismatched, causing the VLAN to be suspended.

```
switch-1# show vpc consistency-parameters interface port-channel 101
```

**Legend:**

- Type 1: vPC will be suspended in case of mismatch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Local Value</th>
<th>Peer Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1000 Mb/s</td>
<td>1000 Mb/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplex</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>full</td>
<td>full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port Mode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>access</td>
<td>trunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTU</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>1500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin port mode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shut Lan</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vPC+ Switch-id</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allowed VLANs</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1-57, 61-3967, 4048-4093</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local suspended VLANs</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Enhanced vPC Example Configuration**

The following example shows the complete configuration procedure using the topology of the enhanced vPC figure in this chapter. In the topology figure, the number pairs beside each port channel link represent the interface port numbers. For example, the switch link labeled with the numbers "3,4" represents interfaces eth1/3 and eth1/4 on the switch.
In procedures where the configuration must be repeated on both switches, the configuration synchronization (config-sync) feature allows you to configure one switch and have the configuration automatically synchronized to the peer switch. For more information about configuration synchronization, see the operations guide for your device.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that the Cisco Nexus Fabric Extenders FEX101 and FEX102 are attached and online.

**Procedure**

**Step 1**

Enable the vPC and LACP features on each switch.

**Example:**

```plaintext
switch-1(config)# feature vpc
switch-1(config)# feature lacp

switch-2(config)# feature vpc
switch-2(config)# feature lacp
```

**Step 2**

Create required VLANs on each switch.

**Example:**

```plaintext
switch-1(config)# vlan 10-20
switch-2(config)# vlan 10-20
```

**Step 3**

Assign a vPC domain ID and configure the vPC peer-keepalive link on each switch.

**Example:**

```plaintext
switch-1(config)# vpc domain 123
switch-1(config-vpc)# peer-keepalive destination 172.25.182.100

switch-2(config)# vpc domain 123
switch-2(config-vpc)# peer-keepalive destination 172.25.182.99
```

**Note**

When you configure each switch, use the IP address of the peer switch as the peer-keepalive destination.

**Step 4**

Configure the vPC peer link on each switch.

**Example:**

```plaintext
switch-1(config)# interface eth1/1-2
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 1 mode active
switch-1(config-if)# interface Po1
switch-1(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
switch-1(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 1, 10-20
switch-1(config-if)# vpc peer-link

switch-2(config)# interface eth1/1-2
```
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 1 mode active
switch-2(config-if)# interface Po1
switch-2(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
switch-2(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 1, 10-20
switch-2(config-if)# vpc peer-link

Step 5  Configure port channels from the first FEX to each switch.

Example:
switch-1(config)# fex 101
switch-1(config-fex)# interface eth1/3-4
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 101
switch-1(config-if)# interface po101
switch-1(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
switch-1(config-if)# vpc 101
switch-1(config-if)# fex associate 101

switch-2(config)# fex 101
switch-2(config-fex)# interface eth1/3-4
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 101
switch-2(config-if)# interface po101
switch-2(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
switch-2(config-if)# vpc 101
switch-2(config-if)# fex associate 101

Step 6  Configure port channels from the second FEX to each switch.

Example:
switch-1(config)# fex 102
switch-1(config-fex)# interface eth1/5-6
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 102
switch-1(config-if)# interface po102
switch-1(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
switch-1(config-if)# vpc 102
switch-1(config-if)# fex associate 102

switch-2(config)# fex 102
switch-2(config-fex)# interface eth1/5-6
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 102
switch-2(config-if)# interface po102
switch-2(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
switch-2(config-if)# vpc 102
switch-2(config-if)# fex associate 102

Step 7  Configure a host port channel on each FEX.

Example:
switch-1(config)# interface eth101/1/1, eth101/1/2
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active
switch-1(config-if)# interface eth102/1/1, eth102/1/2
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active
switch-1(config-if)# int po2
switch-1(config-if)# switchport access vlan 10

switch-2(config)# interface eth101/1/1, eth101/1/2
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active
switch-2(config-if)# interface eth102/1/1, eth102/1/2
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active
switch-2(config-if)# int po2
switch-2(config-if)# switchport access vlan 10
Configuring Virtual Port Channels

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Information About vPCs, on page 133
- Guidelines and Limitations for vPCs, on page 152
- Configuring vPCs, on page 153
- Configuring the vPC Peer Switch, on page 170
- Configuring Layer 3 over vPC, on page 173
- Isolating and Restoring a Switch from the vPC Complex, on page 174
- Verifying the vPC Configuration, on page 176
- vPC Example Configurations, on page 182
- vPC Default Settings, on page 186

Information About vPCs

vPC Overview

A virtual port channel (vPC) allows links that are physically connected to two different Cisco Nexus devices or Cisco Nexus Fabric Extenders to appear as a single port channel by a third device (see the following figure). The third device can be a switch, server, or any other networking device. You can configure vPCs in topologies that include Cisco Nexus devices connected to Cisco Nexus Fabric Extenders. A vPC can provide multipathing, which allows you to create redundancy by enabling multiple parallel paths between nodes and load balancing traffic where alternative paths exist.
You configure the EtherChannels by using one of the following:

- No protocol
- Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)

When you configure the EtherChannels in a vPC—including the vPC peer link channel—each switch can have up to 16 active links in a single EtherChannel. When you configure a vPC on a Fabric Extender, only one port is allowed in an EtherChannel.

**Note**
To enable the vPC functionality, you must create a peer-keepalive link and a peer-link under the vPC domain for the two vPC peer switches to provide the vPC functionality.

To create a vPC peer link you configure an EtherChannel on one Cisco Nexus device by using two or more Ethernet ports. On the other switch, you configure another EtherChannel again using two or more Ethernet ports. Connecting these two EtherChannels together creates a vPC peer link.

**Note**
We recommend that you configure the vPC peer-link EtherChannels as trunks.

The vPC domain includes both vPC peer devices, the vPC peer-keepalive link, the vPC peer link, and all of the EtherChannels in the vPC domain connected to the downstream device. You can have only one vPC domain ID on each vPC peer device.

**Note**
Always attach all vPC devices using EtherChannels to both vPC peer devices.

A vPC provides the following benefits:

- Allows a single device to use an EtherChannel across two upstream devices
- Eliminates Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) blocked ports
• Provides a loop-free topology
• Uses all available uplink bandwidth
• Provides fast convergence if either the link or a switch fails
• Provides link-level resiliency
• Assures high availability

Terminology

vPC Terminology

The terminology used in vPCs is as follows:

• vPC—combined EtherChannel between the vPC peer devices and the downstream device.

• vPC peer device—one of a pair of devices that are connected with the special EtherChannel known as the vPC peer link.

• vPC peer link—link used to synchronize states between the vPC peer devices.

• vPC member port—interfaces that belong to the vPCs.

• Host vPC port—Fabric Extender host interfaces that belong to a vPC.

• vPC domain—domain that includes both vPC peer devices, the vPC peer-keepalive link, and all of the port channels in the vPC connected to the downstream devices. It is also associated to the configuration mode that you must use to assign vPC global parameters. The vPC domain ID must be the same on both switches.

• vPC peer-keepalive link—the peer-keepalive link monitors the vitality of a vPC peer Cisco Nexus device. The peer-keepalive link sends configurable, periodic keepalive messages between vPC peer devices.

No data or synchronization traffic moves over the vPC peer-keepalive link; the only traffic on this link is a message that indicates that the originating switch is operating and running vPCs.

Fabric Extender Terminology

The terminology used for the Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender is as follows:

• Fabric interface—a 10-Gigabit Ethernet uplink port designated for connection from the Fabric Extender to its parent switch. A fabric interface cannot be used for any other purpose. It must be directly connected to the parent switch.

• EtherChannel fabric interface—an EtherChannel uplink connection from the Fabric Extender to its parent switch. This connection consists of fabric interfaces bundled into a single logical channel.

• Host interface—an Ethernet interface for server or host connectivity. These ports are 1-Gigabit Ethernet interfaces or 10-Gigabit Ethernet interfaces, depending on the fabric extender model.

• EtherChannel host interface—an EtherChannel downlink connection from the Fabric Extender host interface to a server port.
An EtherChannel host interface consists of only one host interface and can be configured either as a Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) or non-LACP EtherChannel.

## Supported vPC Topologies

### Cisco Nexus Device vPC Topology

You can connect a pair of Cisco Nexus devices in a vPC directly to another switch or to a server. vPC peer switches must be of the same type, for example, you can connect a pair of Cisco Nexus devices. Up to 8 interfaces could be connected to each Cisco Nexus device providing 16 interfaces bundled for the vPC pair. The topology that is shown in the following figure provides the vPC functionality to dual connected switches or servers with 10-Gigabit or 1-Gigabit Ethernet uplink interfaces.

**Note**

If you configure the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) on a vPC peer switch, but do not enable LACP on the end-host port (lacp-individual state), the end-host ports reinitializes (port flap) when the secondary vPC peer is reloaded.

The switch connected to the pair of Cisco Nexus devices can be any standards-based Ethernet switch. Common environments to use this configuration include Blade Chassis with dual switches connected to the pair of Cisco Nexus devices through vPC or Unified Computing Systems connected to the pair of Cisco Nexus devices.

### Single Homed Fabric Extender vPC Topology

You can connect a server with dual or quad or more network adapters that are configured in a vPC to a pair of Cisco Nexus Fabric Extenders which are connected to the Cisco Nexus devices as depicted. Depending on the FEX model, you may be able to connect one or more network adapter interfaces to each fabric extender. As an example, the following figure refers to a topology built with the Cisco Nexus 2148T fabric extender, where a server has one link only to each fabric extender. A topology with Cisco Nexus 2248TP or with Cisco Nexus 2232PP fabric extender could consist of more links from the server to a single fabric extender.

The topology that is shown in the following figure provides the vPC functionality to dual homed servers with 1-Gigabit Ethernet uplink interfaces.
The Cisco Nexus device can support up to 12 configured single homed Fabric Extenders (576 ports) with this topology however only 480 576 dual homed host servers can be configured in a vPCs with this configuration.

**Note**
The Cisco Nexus 2148T fabric extender does not support EtherChannels on its host interfaces. Therefore a maximum of two links can be configured in an EtherChannel from the server where each link is connected to a separate Fabric Extender.

### Dual Homed Fabric Extender vPC Topology

You can connect the Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender to two upstream Cisco Nexus devices and downstream to a number of single homed servers. The topology shown in the following figure provides the vPC functionality to singly connected servers with 1-Gigabit Ethernet uplink interfaces.

**Figure 12: Dual Homed Fabric Extender vPC Topology**

The Cisco Nexus device can support up to 12 configured dual homed Fabric Extenders with this topology. A maximum of 576 single homed servers can be connected to this configuration.
vPC Domain

To create a vPC domain, you must first create a vPC domain ID on each vPC peer switch using a number from 1 to 1000. This ID must be the same on a set of vPC peer devices.

You can configure the EtherChannels and vPC peer links by using LACP or no protocol. When possible, we recommend that you use LACP on the peer-link, because LACP provides configuration checks against a configuration mismatch on the EtherChannel.

The vPC peer switches use the vPC domain ID that you configure to automatically assign a unique vPC system MAC address. Each vPC domain has a unique MAC address that is used as a unique identifier for the specific vPC-related operations, although the switches use the vPC system MAC addresses only for link-scope operations, such as LACP. We recommend that you create each vPC domain within the contiguous network with a unique domain ID. You can also configure a specific MAC address for the vPC domain, rather than having the Cisco NX-OS software assign the address.

The vPC peer switches use the vPC domain ID that you configure to automatically assign a unique vPC system MAC address. The switches use the vPC system MAC addresses only for link-scope operations, such as LACP or BPDUs. You can also configure a specific MAC address for the vPC domain.

We recommend that you configure the same VPC domain ID on both peers and, the domain ID should be unique in the network. For example, if there are two different VPCs (one in access and one in aggregation) then each vPC should have a unique domain ID.

After you create a vPC domain, the Cisco NX-OS software automatically creates a system priority for the vPC domain. You can also manually configure a specific system priority for the vPC domain.

---

**Note**

If you manually configure the system priority, you must ensure that you assign the same priority value on both vPC peer switches. If the vPC peer switches have different system priority values, the vPC will not come up.

---

**Peer-Keepalive Link and Messages**

The Cisco NX-OS software uses a peer-keepalive link between the vPC peers to transmit periodic, configurable keepalive messages. You must have Layer 3 connectivity between the peer switches to transmit these messages; the system cannot bring up the vPC peer link unless a peer-keepalive link is already up and running.

You can configure a hold-timeout and a timeout value simultaneously.

**Hold-timeout value**—The hold-timeout value range is between 3 to 10 seconds, with a default value of 3 seconds. This timer starts when the vPC peer link goes down. The purpose of the hold-timeout period is to prevent false-positive cases.

If you configure a hold-timeout value that is lower than the timeout value, then the vPC system ignores vPC peer-keepalive messages for the hold-timeout period and considers messages for the remainder of the timeout period. If no keepalive message is received for this period, the vPC secondary device takes over the role of the primary device. For example, if the hold-timeout value is 3 seconds and the timeout value is 5 seconds, for the first 3 seconds vPC keepalive messages are ignored (such as, when accommodating a supervisor failure for a few seconds after peer link failure) and keepalive messages are considered for the remaining timeout period of 2 seconds. After this period, the vPC secondary device takes over as the primary device, in case there is no keep alive message.
Timeout value—The timeout value range is between 3 to 20 seconds, with a default value of 5 seconds. This timer starts at the end of the hold-timeout interval. If you configure a timeout value that is lower than or equal to the hold-timeout value, then the timeout duration is initiated after the hold-timeout period. For example, if the timeout value is 3 seconds and the hold-timeout value is 5 seconds, the timeout period starts after 5 seconds.

**Note**
We recommend that you configure the vPC peer-keepalive link on the Cisco Nexus device to run in the management VRF using the mgmt 0 interfaces. If you configure the default VRF, ensure that the vPC peer link is not used to carry the vPC peer-keepalive messages.

**Compatibility Parameters for vPC Peer Links**

Many configuration and operational parameters must be identical on all interfaces in the vPC. After you enable the vPC feature and configure the peer link on both vPC peer switches, Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) messages provide a copy of the configuration on the local vPC peer switch configuration to the remote vPC peer switch. The system then determines whether any of the crucial configuration parameters differ on the two switches.

Enter the `show vpc consistency-parameters` command to display the configured values on all interfaces in the vPC. The displayed configurations are only those configurations that would limit the vPC peer link and vPC from coming up.

The compatibility check process for vPCs differs from the compatibility check for regular EtherChannels.

**Configuration Parameters That Must Be Identical**

The configuration parameters in this section must be configured identically on both switches at either end of the vPC peer link.

**Note**
You must ensure that all interfaces in the vPC have the identical operational and configuration parameters listed in this section.

Enter the `show vpc consistency-parameters` command to display the configured values on all interfaces in the vPC. The displayed configurations are only those configurations that would limit the vPC peer link and vPC from coming up.

The switch automatically checks for compatibility of these parameters on the vPC interfaces. The per-interface parameters must be consistent per interface, and the global parameters must be consistent globally.

- Port-channel mode: on, off, or active
- Link speed per channel
- Duplex mode per channel
- Trunk mode per channel:
  - Native VLAN
  - VLANs allowed on trunk
  - Tagging of native VLAN traffic
- Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) mode
- STP region configuration for Multiple Spanning Tree (MST)
- Enable or disable state per VLAN
• STP global settings:
  • Bridge Assurance setting
  • Port type setting—We recommend that you set all vPC interfaces as normal ports
  • Loop Guard settings

• STP interface settings:
  • Port type setting
  • Loop Guard
  • Root Guard

• For the Fabric Extender vPC topology, all the interface level parameters mentioned above should be identically configured for host interface from both the switches.

• Fabric Extender FEX number configured on an EtherChannel fabric interface; for the Fabric Extender vPC topology.

If any of these parameters are not enabled or defined on either switch, the vPC consistency check ignores those parameters.

---

**Note**

To ensure that none of the vPC interfaces are in the suspend mode, enter the `show vpc brief` and `show vpc consistency-parameters` commands and check the syslog messages.

---

**Configuration Parameters That Should Be Identical**

When any of the following parameters are not configured identically on both vPC peer switches, a misconfiguration might cause undesirable behavior in the traffic flow:

• MAC aging timers
• Static MAC entries
• VLAN interface—Each switch on the end of the vPC peer link must have a VLAN interface configured for the same VLAN on both ends and they must be in the same administrative and operational mode. Those VLANs configured on only one switch of the peer link do not pass traffic using the vPC or peer link. You must create all VLANs on both the primary and secondary vPC switches, or the VLAN will be suspended.
• Private VLAN configuration
• All ACL configurations and parameters
• Quality of service (QoS) configuration and parameters—Local parameters; global parameters must be identical
• STP interface settings:
  • BPDU Filter
  • BPDU Guard
  • Cost
  • Link type
  • Priority
  • VLANs (Rapid PVST+)

To ensure that all the configuration parameters are compatible, we recommend that you display the configurations for each vPC peer switch once you configure the vPC.
Graceful Type-1 Check

When a consistency check fails, vPCs are brought down only on the secondary vPC switch. The VLANs remain up on the primary switch and Type-1 configurations can be performed without traffic disruption. This feature is used both in the case of global as well as interface-specific Type-1 inconsistencies.

This feature is not enabled for dual-active FEX ports. When a Type-1 mismatch occurs, VLANs are suspended on these ports on both switches.

Per-VLAN Consistency Check

Beginning with Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N2(1), some Type-1 consistency checks are performed on a per-VLAN basis when spanning tree is enabled or disabled on a VLAN. VLANs that do not pass the consistency check are brought down on both the primary and secondary switches while other VLANs are not affected.

vPC Auto-Recovery

Beginning with Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N2(1), the vPC auto-recovery feature re-enables vPC links in the following scenarios:

When both vPC peer switches reload and only one switch reboots, auto-recovery allows that switch to assume the role of the primary switch and the vPC links will be allowed to come up after a predetermined period of time. The reload delay period in this scenario can range from 240 to 3600 seconds.

When vPCs are disabled on a secondary vPC switch due to a peer-link failure and then the primary vPC switch fails or is unable to forward traffic, the secondary switch reenables the vPCs. In this scenario, the vPC waits for three consecutive keepalive failures to recover the vPC links.

vPC Peer Links

A vPC peer link is the link that is used to synchronize the states between the vPC peer devices.

Note

You must configure the peer-keepalive link before you configure the vPC peer link or the peer link will not come up.

vPC Peer Link Overview

You can have only two switches as vPC peers; each switch can serve as a vPC peer to only one other vPC peer. The vPC peer switches can also have non-vPC links to other switches.

To make a valid configuration, you configure an EtherChannel on each switch and then configure the vPC domain. You assign the EtherChannel on each switch as a peer link. For redundancy, we recommend that you should configure at least two dedicated ports into the EtherChannel; if one of the interfaces in the vPC peer link fails, the switch automatically falls back to use another interface in the peer link.

Note

We recommend that you configure the EtherChannels in trunk mode.
Many operational parameters and configuration parameters must be the same in each switch connected by a vPC peer link. Because each switch is completely independent on the management plane, you must ensure that the switches are compatible on the critical parameters. vPC peer switches have separate control planes. After configuring the vPC peer link, you should display the configuration on each vPC peer switch to ensure that the configurations are compatible.

You must ensure that the two switches connected by the vPC peer link have certain identical operational and configuration parameters.

When you configure the vPC peer link, the vPC peer switches negotiate that one of the connected switches is the primary switch and the other connected switch is the secondary switch. By default, the Cisco NX-OS software uses the lowest MAC address to elect the primary switch. The software takes different actions on each switch—that is, the primary and secondary—only in certain failover conditions. If the primary switch fails, the secondary switch becomes the operational primary switch when the system recovers, and the previously primary switch is now the secondary switch.

You can also configure which of the vPC switches is the primary switch. If you want to configure the role priority again to make one vPC switch the primary switch, configure the role priority on both the primary and secondary vPC switches with the appropriate values, shut down the EtherChannel that is the vPC peer link on both switches by entering the `shutdown` command, and reenable the EtherChannel on both switches by entering the `no shutdown` command.

MAC addresses that are learned over vPC links are also synchronized between the peers.

Configuration information flows across the vPC peer links using the Cisco Fabric Services over Ethernet (CFSoE) protocol. All MAC addresses for those VLANs configured on both switches are synchronized between vPC peer switches. The software uses CFSoE for this synchronization.

If the vPC peer link fails, the software checks the status of the remote vPC peer switch using the peer-keepalive link, which is a link between vPC peer switches, to ensure that both switches are up. If the vPC peer switch is up, the secondary vPC switch disables all vPC ports on its switch. The data then forwards down the remaining active links of the EtherChannel.

The software learns of a vPC peer switch failure when the keepalive messages are not returned over the peer-keepalive link.

Use a separate link (vPC peer-keepalive link) to send configurable keepalive messages between the vPC peer switches. The keepalive messages on the vPC peer-keepalive link determines whether a failure is on the vPC peer link only or on the vPC peer switch. The keepalive messages are used only when all the links in the peer link fail.

**vPC Number**

Once you have created the vPC domain ID and the vPC peer link, you can create EtherChannels to attach the downstream switch to each vPC peer switch. That is, you create one single EtherChannel on the downstream switch with half of the ports to the primary vPC peer switch and the other half of the ports to the secondary peer switch.

On each vPC peer switch, you assign the same vPC number to the EtherChannel that connects to the downstream switch. You will experience minimal traffic disruption when you are creating vPCs. To simplify the configuration, you can assign the vPC ID number for each EtherChannel to be the same as the EtherChannel itself (that is, vPC ID 10 for EtherChannel 10).
The vPC number that you assign to the EtherChannel that connects to the downstream switch from the vPC peer switch must be identical on both vPC peer switches.

**Note**
Layer 3 over vPC

From Cisco NX-OS Release 7.3(0)N1(1), a Layer 3 (L3) device can form peering adjacency with both the vPC peers in a vPC domain. Traffic sent over a peer link will not have Time To Live (TTL) decremented. The peer-gateway feature should be enabled before configuring the Layer 3 over vPC feature.

The following are the benefits of configuring this feature:

- You can set up peer adjacency between Layer 3 device and a vPC peer without separate Layer 3 links. Both bridged and routed traffic can flow over the same link.
- Peer adjacency can be formed on vPC VLANs.
- Peer adjacency helps in faster convergence if link or device failure occurs in traffic.

The following illustration shows that peer-gateway feature allows the vPC peer (SVI X) to forward packets on behalf of the other peer (SVI Y). This saves bandwidth by avoiding traffic over the peer link.

*Figure 13: Layer 3 over vPC Solution*

**Layer 3 over vPC: Supported Designs**

The following figures illustrate the designs that are supported for configuring Layer 3 over vPC.
Figure 14: Router Peers with Both vPC Peers

Figure 15: Peering Established Over an STP Interconnection Using a vPC VLAN.

Router peers with both vPC peers.

Figure 16: Route Peering of Orphan Device with both the vPC peers

Figure 17: Peering over PC Interconnection and Over vPC peer Link Using vPC VLAN.

Both the Routers peer with both vPC peers.
Each Nexus device peers with two vPC peers.

**Peering with vPC+** (supported since Release 6.0(2)N2(1)):

- The peer link ports are configured as FabricPath core ports.
- North facing ports function as FabricPath spine port.
- North facing ports can also be Layer 3 ports in non-FabricPath topology.

**Layer 3 over vPC: Unsupported Designs**

The following figures illustrate the designs that are not supported for configuring the Layer 3 over vPC feature.

The following design is not supported because the TTL distance between the two orphan devices is 2. This leads to the loss of control packets at the vPC while forming routing adjacencies.
Figure 20: Orphan Device Peering over vPC Interconnection (DCI Case)

Figure 21: Peering with vPC Peers Over FEX vPC Host Interfaces
Figure 22: Peering Across vPC Interfaces with Unequal L3 metrics

Figure 23: Peering with vPC+ Peers and STP Interconnection Using a vPC+ VLAN
vPC Interactions with Other Features

Configuring vPC Peer Links and Links to the Core

Configure the command line interface by using a track object and a track list that is associated with the Layer 3 link to the core and on all vPC peer links on both vPC peer devices. You use this configuration to avoid
dropping traffic if that particular module goes down because when all the tracked objects on the track list go
down, the system does the following:

- Stops the vPC primary peer device sending peer-keepalive messages which forces the vPC secondary
  peer device to take over.
- Brings down all the downstream vPCs on that vPC peer device, which forces all the traffic to be rerouted
  in the access switch toward the other vPC peer device.

Once you configure this feature and if the module fails, the system automatically suspends all the vPC links
on the primary vPC peer device and stops the peer-keepalive messages. This action forces the vPC secondary
device to take over the primary role and all the vPC traffic to go to this new vPC primary device until the
system stabilizes.

Create a track list that contains all the links to the core and all the vPC peer links as its object. Enable tracking
for the specified vPC domain for this track list. Apply this same configuration to the other vPC peer device.

Before you begin

To configure a track list to switch over vPC to the remote peer when all related interfaces fail:

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# interface type slot/port</td>
<td>Enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config-if)# track track-id interface type slot/port line-protocol</td>
<td>Configures the track objects on an interface (Layer 3 to core).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switch(config-track)# track track-id interface type slot/port line-protocol</td>
<td>Tracks the objects on an interface (Layer 3 to core).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switch(config)# track track-id interface port-channel port line-protocol</td>
<td>Configures the track objects on a port channel (vPC peer link).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> switch(config)# track track-id list boolean [OR</td>
<td>AND]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> switch(config-track)# object number</td>
<td>Specifies the object number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 8</strong> switch(config-track)# end</td>
<td>Exits track configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 9</strong> switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</td>
<td>Enters vPC domain configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 10</strong> switch(config-vpc-domain)# track number</td>
<td>Adds the track object to the vPC domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 11</strong> (Optional) switch(config)# show vpc brief</td>
<td>Displays the track object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
vPC and LACP

The Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) uses the system MAC address of the vPC domain to form the LACP Aggregation Group (LAG) ID for the vPC.

You can use LACP on all the vPC EtherChannels, including those channels from the downstream switch. We recommend that you configure LACP with active mode on the interfaces on each EtherChannel on the vPC peer switches. This configuration allows you to more easily detect compatibility between switches, unidirectional links, and multihop connections, and provides dynamic reaction to run-time changes and link failures.

The vPC peer link supports 16 EtherChannel interfaces.

Note
When you manually configure the system priority, you must ensure that you assign the same priority value on both vPC peer switches. If the vPC peer switches have different system priority values, vPC does not come up.

Note
During a vPC role change (where secondary becomes primary), if the ports are in LACP-individual state on FEX, the ports will flap and this will cause brief connectivity loss before the primary is up. To avoid this issue, ensure that port-channel member ports are not configured as LACP-individual state or LACP is not used (On mode).

Example
This example shows how to configure a track list to trigger when all the objects fail using Boolean OR:

```bash
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 8/35
switch(config-if)# track 35 interface ethernet 8/35 line-protocol
switch(config-track)# track 23 interface ethernet 8/33 line-protocol
switch(config-if)# track 55 interface port-channel 100 line-protocol
switch(config)# track 44 list boolean OR
switch(config-track)# object 23
switch(config-track)# object 35
switch(config-track)# object 55
switch(config-track)# end
switch(config)# vpc domain 1
switch(config-vpc-domain)# track 44
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

### Configuring Virtual Port Channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 12</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
vPC Peer Links and STP

When you first bring up the vPC functionality, STP reconverges. STP treats the vPC peer link as a special link and always includes the vPC peer link in the STP active topology.

We recommend that you set all the vPC peer link interfaces to the STP network port type so that Bridge Assurance is automatically enabled on all vPC peer links. We also recommend that you do not enable any of the STP enhancement features on VPC peer links.

You must configure a list of parameters to be identical on the vPC peer switches on both sides of the vPC peer link.

STP is distributed; that is, the protocol continues running on both vPC peer switches. However, the configuration on the vPC peer switch elected as the primary switch controls the STP process for the vPC interfaces on the secondary vPC peer switch.

The primary vPC switch synchronizes the STP state on the vPC secondary peer switch using Cisco Fabric Services over Ethernet (CFSoE).

The vPC manager performs a proposal/handshake agreement between the vPC peer switches that sets the primary and secondary switches and coordinates the two switches for STP. The primary vPC peer switch then controls the STP protocol for vPC interfaces on both the primary and secondary switches.

The Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) use the MAC address set for the vPC for the STP bridge ID in the designated bridge ID field. The vPC primary switch sends these BPDUs on the vPC interfaces.

Note

Display the configuration on both sides of the vPC peer link to ensure that the settings are identical. Use the `show spanning-tree` command to display information about the vPC.

vPC and ARP

Table synchronization across vPC peers is managed in Cisco NX-OS using the reliable transport mechanism of the Cisco Fabric Services over Ethernet (CFSoE) protocol. To support faster convergence of address tables between the vPC peers, the `ip arp synchronize` command must be enabled. This convergence is designed to overcome the delay involved in ARP table restoration when the peer-link port channel flaps or when a vPC peer comes back online.

To improve performance, we recommend that you turn on the ARP sync feature. By default, it is not enabled.

To check whether or not ARP sync is enabled, enter the following command:

```
switch# show running
```

To enable ARP sync, enter the following command:

```
switch(config-vpc-domain) # ip arp synchronize
```

CFSoE

The Cisco Fabric Services over Ethernet (CFSoE) is a reliable state transport mechanism that you can use to synchronize the actions of the vPC peer devices. CFSoE carries messages and packets for many features linked with vPC, such as STP and IGMP. Information is carried in CFS/CFSoE protocol data units (PDU).

When you enable the vPC feature, the device automatically enables CFSoE, and you do not have to configure anything. CFSoE distributions for vPCs do not need the capabilities to distribute over IP or the CFS regions. You do not need to configure anything for the CFSoE feature to work correctly on vPCs.
You can use the **show mac address-table** command to display the MAC addresses that CFSoE synchronizes for the vPC peer link.

---

**Note**

Do not enter the **no cfs eth distribute** or the **no cfs distribute** command. CFSoE must be enabled for vPC functionality. If you do enter either of these commands when vPC is enabled, the system displays an error message.

When you enter the **show cfs application** command, the output displays "Physical-eth," which shows the applications that are using CFSoE.

---

**vPC Peer Switch**

The vPC peer switch feature addresses performance concerns around STP convergence. This feature allows a pair of Cisco Nexus devices to appear as a single STP root in the Layer 2 topology. This feature eliminates the need to pin the STP root to the vPC primary switch and improves vPC convergence if the vPC primary switch fails.

To avoid loops, the vPC peer link is excluded from the STP computation. In vPC peer switch mode, STP BPDUs are sent from both vPC peer devices to avoid issues related to STP BPDU timeout on the downstream switches, which can cause traffic disruption.

This feature can be used with the pure peer switch topology in which the devices all belong to the vPC.

---

**Note**

Peer-switch feature is supported on networks that use vPC and STP-based redundancy is not supported. If the vPC peer-link fail in a hybrid peer-switch configuration, you can lose traffic. In this scenario, the vPC peers use the same STP root ID as well same bridge ID. The access switch traffic is split in two with half going to the first vPC peer and the other half to the second vPC peer. With the peer link failed, there is no impact on north/south traffic but east-west traffic will be lost (black-holed).

For information on STP enhancement features and Rapid PVST+, see the *Layer 2 Switching Configuration Guide* for your device.

---

**Guidelines and Limitations for vPCs**

vPC has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- You must enable the vPC feature before you can configure vPC peer-link and vPC interfaces.
- You must configure the peer-keepalive link before the system can form the vPC peer link.
- The vPC peer-link needs to be formed using a minimum of two 10-Gigabit Ethernet interfaces.
- You can connect a pair of Cisco Nexus 6000 series switches in a vPC directly to another switch or to a server. vPC peer switches must be of the same type (including same switch type, and LEM type). For example, you can connect a pair of Cisco Nexus 6000 series switches, but you cannot connect a Cisco Nexus 6000 series switch to a Cisco Nexus 5600 series switch, or a Cisco Nexus 5500 series switch in a vPC topology. For a Cisco Nexus 6004 switch, you can use Cisco Nexus 5600 LEMs as well as Cisco Nexus 6000 LEMs, but you cannot use different LEM versions in a vPC domain.
• Only port channels can be in vPCs. A vPC can be configured on a normal port channel (switch-to-switch vPC topology), on a port channel fabric interface (fabric extender vPC topology), and on a port channel host interface (host interface vPC topology).

• A Fabric Extender can be a member of a Host Interface vPC topology or a Fabric Extender vPC topology but not both simultaneously.

• You must configure both vPC peer switches; the configuration is not automatically synchronized between the vPC peer devices.

• Check that the necessary configuration parameters are compatible on both sides of the vPC peer link.

• You may experience minimal traffic disruption while configuring vPCs.

• You should configure all the port channels in the vPC using LACP with the interfaces in active mode.

• When the peer-switch command is configured and vPC keepalive messages exchanged through an SVI instead of a management interface, additional Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) configuration is required. STP needs to be disabled on the dedicated link that carries the keepalive traffic between the vPC peers. You can disable STP on the dedicated link by configuring STP BPDUfilter on the both ends of the dedicated link. We recommend that the VLAN of the vPC keepalive SVI be allowed on only the interconnecting dedicated link and disallowed on all other links, including the peer link.

• You should configure both the SVIs as active/active, otherwise this can lead to traffic blackhole.

• A Cisco Nexus 6000 Series Switch that is connected to a router and a vPC peer creates an OSPF association with the attached router but not with the vPC peer. This situation happens if a non-vpc VLAN is on a separate trunk between the VPC peers. If the non-vpc VLAN is on the vpc-peer link, then OSPF works for both vPC peers. This situation only happens when peer-gateway is enabled.

• In some vPC failure scenarios, vPC secondary switch suspends its vPC port-channels after the vPC primary switch failure. To avoid vPC secondary switch suspensions, disable vPC peer-keepalive before bringing down the vPC primary switch (in case of scheduled power down).

• When you enable the vPC Peer Gateway feature, Cisco NX-OS automatically disables IP redirects on all the interface VLANs that are mapped over a vPC VLAN, to avoid generation of IP redirect messages for packets switched through the peer gateway router.

## Configuring vPCs

### Enabling vPCs

You must enable the vPC feature before you can configure and use vPCs.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>switch(config)# feature vpc</td>
<td>Enables vPCs on the switch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Disabling vPCs

You can disable the vPC feature.

### Note
When you disable the vPC feature, the Cisco Nexus device clears all the vPC configurations.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# no feature vpc</td>
<td>Disables vPCs on the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> (Optional) switch# show feature</td>
<td>Displays which features are enabled on the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> (Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to disable the vPC feature:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no feature vpc
```

## Creating a vPC Domain

You must create identical vPC domain IDs on both the vPC peer devices. This domain ID is used to automatically form the vPC system MAC address.
Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the vPC feature.

You must configure both switches on either side of the vPC peer link.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</td>
<td>Creates a vPC domain on the switch, and enters the vpc-domain configuration mode. There is no default domain-id; the range is from 1 to 1000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> You can also use the vpc domain command to enter the vpc-domain configuration mode for an existing vPC domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch# show vpc brief</td>
<td>Displays brief information about each vPC domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to create a vPC domain:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vpc domain 5
```

### Configuring a vPC Keepalive Link and Messages

You can configure the destination IP for the peer-keepalive link that carries the keepalive messages. Optionally, you can configure other parameters for the keepalive messages.

The Cisco NX-OS software uses the peer-keepalive link between the vPC peers to transmit periodic, configurable keepalive messages. You must have Layer 3 connectivity between the peer devices to transmit these messages. The system cannot bring up the vPC peer link unless the peer-keepalive link is already up and running.

Ensure that both the source and destination IP addresses used for the peer-keepalive message are unique in your network and these IP addresses are reachable from the Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) instance associated with the vPC peer-keepalive link.
We recommend that you configure a separate VRF instance and put a Layer 3 port from each vPC peer switch into that VRF instance for the vPC peer-keepalive link. Do not use the peer link itself to send vPC peer-keepalive messages. For information on creating and configuring VRFs, see the Unicast Routing Configuration Guide for your device.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you have enabled the vPC feature.

You must configure the vPC peer-keepalive link before the system can form the vPC peer link.

You must configure both switches on either side of the vPC peer link.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id Creates a vPC domain on the switch if it does not already exist, and enters the vpc-domain configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>switch(config-vpc-domain)# peer-keepalive destination ipaddress [hold-timeout secs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config-vpc-domain)# vpc peer-keepalive destination ipaddress source ipaddress Configures a separate VRF instance and puts a Layer 3 port from each vPC peer device into that VRF for the vPC peer-keepalive link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch# show vpc peer-keepalive Displays information about the configuration for the keepalive messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to configure the destination IP address for the vPC-peer-keepalive link:

```
switch# configure terminal
```
This example shows how to set up the peer keepalive link connection between the primary and secondary vPC device:

```
switch(config)# vpc domain 5
switch(config-vpc-domain)# peer-keepalive destination 10.10.10.42
```

This example shows how to create a separate VRF named vpc_keepalive for the vPC keepalive link and how to verify the new VRF:

```
vrf context vpc_keepalive
interface Ethernet1/31
    switchport access vlan 123
interface Vlan123
    vrf member vpc_keepalive
    ip address 123.1.1.2/30
    no shutdown
vpc domain 1
    peer-keepalive destination 123.1.1.1 source 123.1.1.2 vrf vpc_keepalive
vpc_keepalive
```

```
L3-NEXUS-2# show vpc peer-keepalive
```

```
vPC keep-alive status : peer is alive
  --Peer is alive for : (154477) seconds, (908) msec
  --Send status : Success
  --Last send at : 2011.01.14 19:02:50 100 ms
  --Sent on interface : Vlan123
  --Receive status : Success
  --Last receive at : 2011.01.14 19:02:50 103 ms
  --Received on interface : Vlan123
  --Last update from peer : (0) seconds, (524) msec

vPC Keep-alive parameters
  --Destination : 123.1.1.1
  --Keepalive interval : 1000 msec
  --Keepalive timeout : 5 seconds
  --Keepalive hold timeout : 3 seconds
  --Keepalive vrf : vpc_keepalive
  --Keepalive udp port : 3200
  --Keepalive tos : 192
```

The services provided by the switch, such as ping, ssh, telnet, radius, are VRF aware. The VRF name need to be configured or specified in order for the correct routing table to be used.

```
L3-NEXUS-2# ping 123.1.1.1 vrf vpc_keepalive
PING 123.1.1.1 (123.1.1.1): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 123.1.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=254 time=3.234 ms
64 bytes from 123.1.1.1: icmp_seq=1 ttl=254 time=4.931 ms
64 bytes from 123.1.1.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=254 time=4.965 ms
64 bytes from 123.1.1.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=254 time=4.971 ms
64 bytes from 123.1.1.1: icmp_seq=4 ttl=254 time=4.915 ms
--- 123.1.1.1 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0.00% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 3.234/4.603/4.971 ms
```
Creating a vPC Peer Link

You can create a vPC peer link by designating the EtherChannel that you want on each switch as the peer link for the specified vPC domain. We recommend that you configure the EtherChannels that you are designating as the vPC peer link in trunk mode and that you use two ports on separate modules on each vPC peer switch for redundancy.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you have enabled the vPC feature.

You must configure both switches on either side of the vPC peer link

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# interface port-channel channel-number</td>
<td>Selects the EtherChannel that you want to use as the vPC peer link for this switch, and enters the interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config-if)# vpc peer-link</td>
<td>Configures the selected EtherChannel as the vPC peer link, and enters the vpc-domain configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> (Optional) switch# show vpc brief</td>
<td>Displays information about each vPC, including information about the vPC peer link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> (Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to configure a vPC peer link:

```bash
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface port-channel 20
switch(config-if)# vpc peer-link
```

**Checking the Configuration Compatibility**

After you have configured the vPC peer link on both vPC peer switches, check that the configurations are consistent on all vPC interfaces.
Beginning with Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1), the following QoS parameters support Type 2 consistency checks:

- Network QoS—MTU and Pause
- Input Queuing—Bandwidth and Absolute Priority
- Output Queuing—Bandwidth and Absolute Priority

In the case of a Type 2 mismatch, the vPC is not suspended. Type 1 mismatches suspend the vPC.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch# show vpc consistency-parameters {global</td>
<td>interface port-channel channel-number}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This example shows how to check that the required configurations are compatible across all the vPC interfaces:

```
switch# show vpc consistency-parameters global

Legend:
Type 1 : vPC will be suspended in case of mismatch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Local Value</th>
<th>Peer Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QoS</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>([], [], [], [], [], [])</td>
<td>([], [], [], [], [], [])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network QoS (MTU)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>(1538, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)</td>
<td>(1538, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network QoS (Pause)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>(F, F, F, F, F, F)</td>
<td>(1538, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input Queuing (Bandwidth)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>(100, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)</td>
<td>(100, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input Queuing (Absolute Priority)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>(F, F, F, F, F, F)</td>
<td>(100, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Queuing (Bandwidth)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>(100, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)</td>
<td>(100, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Queuing (Absolute Priority)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>(F, F, F, F, F, F)</td>
<td>(100, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP Mode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Rapid-PVST</td>
<td>Rapid-PVST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP Disabled</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP MST Region Name</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP MST Region Revision</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP MST Region Instance to VLAN Mapping</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP Loopguard</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP Bridge Assurance</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP Port Type, Edge</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Normal, Disabled,</td>
<td>Normal, Disabled,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BDUP Filter, Edge BDUGuard</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP MST Simulate PVST</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allowed VLANS</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1,624</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local suspended VLANS</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>624</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This example shows how to check that the required configurations are compatible for an EtherChannel interface:

```
switch# show vpc consistency-parameters interface port-channel 20

Legend:
Type 1 : vPC will be suspended in case of mismatch
### Enabling vPC Auto-Recovery

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</td>
<td>Enters vpc-domain configuration mode for an existing vPC domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config-vpc-domain)# auto-recovery reload-delay delay</td>
<td>Enables the auto-recovery feature and sets the reload delay period. The default is disabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to enable the auto-recovery feature in vPC domain 10 and set the delay period for 240 seconds:

```
switch(config)# vpc domain 10
switch(config-vpc-domain)# auto-recovery reload-delay 240
```

**Warning:** Enables restoring of VPCs in a peer-detached state after reload, will wait for 240 seconds (by default) to determine if peer is un-reachable

This example shows how to view the status of the auto-recovery feature in vPC domain 10:

```
switch(config-vpc-domain)# show running-config vpc
!Command: show running-config vpc
!Time: Tue Dec 7 02:38:44 2010

feature vpc
vpc domain 10
  peer-keepalive destination 10.193.51.170
```
configuring the restore time delay

beginning with cisco nx-os release 5.0(3)n1(1), you can configure a restore timer that delays the vPC from coming back up until after the peer adjacency forms and the vlan interfaces are back up. this feature avoids packet drops if the routing tables fail to converge before the vPC is once again passing traffic.

before you begin
ensure that you have enabled the vPC feature.

you must configure both switches on either side of the vPC peer link with the following procedures.

procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>step</th>
<th>command or action</th>
<th>purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</td>
<td>creates a vPC domain on the switch if it does not already exist, and enters vpc-domain configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>step 3</td>
<td>switch(config-vpc-domain)# delay restore time</td>
<td>configures the time delay before the vPC is restored. the restore time is the number of seconds to delay bringing up the restored vPC peer device. the range is from 1 to 3600. the default is 30 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>step 4</td>
<td>(optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

example

this example shows how to configure the delay reload time for a vPC link:

```
switch(config)# vpc domain 1
switch(config-vpc-domain)# delay restore 10
switch(config-vpc-domain)#
```

excluding vlan interfaces from shutting down a vPC peer link fails

when a vPC peer-link is lost, the vPC secondary switch suspends its vPC member ports and its switch virtual interface (SVI) interfaces. all Layer 3 forwarding is disabled for all VLANs on the vPC secondary switch. you can exclude specific SVI interfaces so that they are not suspended.
Before you begin

Ensure that the VLAN interfaces have been configured.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</td>
<td>Creates a vPC domain on the switch if it does not already exist, and enters vpc-domain configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>switch(config-vpc-domain)# dual-active exclude interface-vlan range</td>
<td>Specifies the VLAN interfaces that should remain up when a vPC peer-link is lost. range—Range of VLAN interfaces that you want to exclude from shutting down. The range is from 1 to 4094.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to keep the interfaces on VLAN 10 up on the vPC peer switch if a peer link fails:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vpc domain 5
switch(config-vpc-domain)# dual-active exclude interface-vlan 10
```

Configuring the VRF Name

The switch services, such as ping, ssh, telnet, radius, are VRF aware. You must configure the VRF name in order for the correct routing table to be used.

You can specify the VRF name.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>switch# ping ipaddress vrf vrf-name</td>
<td>Specifies the virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) name to use. The VRF name is case sensitive and can be a maximum of 32 characters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to specify the VRF named vpc_keepalive:
switch# ping 123.1.1.1 vrf vpc_keeplive
PING 123.1.1.1 (123.1.1.1): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 123.1.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=254 time=3.234 ms
64 bytes from 123.1.1.1: icmp_seq=1 ttl=254 time=4.931 ms
64 bytes from 123.1.1.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=254 time=4.965 ms
64 bytes from 123.1.1.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=254 time=4.971 ms
64 bytes from 123.1.1.1: icmp_seq=4 ttl=254 time=4.915 ms
--- 123.1.1.1 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0.00% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 3.234/4.603/4.971 ms

Binding a VRF Instance to a vPC

You can bind a VRF instance to a vPC. One reserved VLAN is required for each VRF. Without this command, the receivers in a non-vPC VLAN and the receivers connected to a Layer 3 interface might not receive multicast traffic. The non-vPC VLANs are the VLANs that are not trunked over a peerlink.

Note
If you configure the vpc bind-vrf command to forward multicast traffic over the vPC peer link, you need to reload the switches to avoid any traffic loss.

Before you begin
Use the show interfaces brief command to view the interfaces that are in use on a switch. To bind the VRF instance to the vPC, you must use a VLAN that is not already in use.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# vpc bind-vrf vrf-name vlan vlan-id</td>
<td>Binds a VRF instance to a vPC and specifies the VLAN to bind to the vPC. The VLAN ID range is from 1 to 3967 and from 4049 to 4093.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example
This example shows how to bind a vPC to the default VRF instance using VLAN 2:

switch(config)# vpc bind-vrf default vlan vlan2

Suspending Orphan Ports on a Secondary Switch in a vPC Topology

You can suspend a non-virtual port channel (vPC) port when a vPC secondary peer link goes down. A non-vPC port or an orphan port is a port that is not part of a vPC.
When a port is configured as an orphan port, the port will flap. This occurs because the system reevaluates whether the port can be brought up, given the constraints of the orphan port. For example, a Multichassis Etherchannel Trunk (MCT) needs to be up and election needs to be complete.

**Before you begin**

Enable the vPC feature.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# interface ethernet slot/port</td>
<td>Specifies the port that you want to configure and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config-if)# vpc orphan-port suspend</td>
<td>Suspends the specified port if the secondary switch goes down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switch(config-if)# exit</td>
<td>Exits interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> (Optional) switch# show vpc orphan-port</td>
<td>Displays the orphan port configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> (Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to suspend an orphan port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/20
switch(config-if)# vpc orphan-port suspend
```
This example shows how to display ports that are not part of the vPC but that share common VLANs with ports that are part of the vPC:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# show vpc orphan-ports
Note:  
--------::Going through port database. Please be patient.::--------
VLAN Orphan Ports
-------- -------------------------
1 Po600
2 Po600
3 Po600
4 Po600
5 Po600
6 Po600
7 Po600
8 Po600
9 Po600
10 Po600
11 Po600
12 Po600
13 Po600
14 Po600
...
```

Creating an EtherChannel Host Interface

To connect to a downstream server from a Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender you can create a EtherChannel host interface. An EtherChannel host interface can have only one host interface as a member depending on the fabric extender model. The Cisco Nexus 2148T allows only one interface member per fabric extender, newer fabric extenders allow up to 8 members of the same port-channel on a single fabric extender. You need to create an EtherChannel host interface to configure a vPC on it that uses the Fabric Extender topology.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the vPC feature.

Ensure that the connected Fabric Extender is online.

You must configure both switches on either side of the vPC peer link with the following procedure.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>switch(config)# interface ethernet chassis/slot/port</td>
<td>Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: If this is a 10G breakout port, the slot/port syntax is QSFP-module/port.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# channel-group channel-number mode {active</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Moving Other Port Channels into a vPC

#### Before you begin
Ensure that you have enabled the vPC feature.

You must configure both switches on either side of the vPC peer link with the following procedure.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# interface port-channel channel-number</td>
<td>Selects the port channel that you want to put into the vPC to connect to the downstream switch, and enters interface configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> A vPC can be configured on a normal port channel (physical vPC topology), on an port channel fabric interface (fabric extender vPC topology), and on a port channel host interface (host interface vPC topology)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>switch(config-if)# vpc number</td>
<td>Configures the selected port channel into the vPC to connect to the downstream switch. The range is from 1 to 4096.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The vPC number that you assign to the port channel that connects to the downstream switch from the vPC peer switch must be identical on both vPC peer switches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Manually Configuring a vPC Domain MAC Address

#### Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the vPC feature.

You must configure both switches on either side of the vPC peer link.

#### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>switch(config-vpc-domain)# system-mac mac-address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch# show vpc role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Manually Configuring the System Priority

When you create a vPC domain, the system automatically creates a vPC system priority. However, you can also manually configure a system priority for the vPC domain.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the vPC feature.

You must configure both switches on either side of the vPC peer link.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</td>
<td>Selects an existing vPC domain on the switch, or creates a new vPC domain, and enters the vpc-domain configuration mode. There is no default domain-id; the range is from 1 to 1000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config-vpc-domain)# system-priority priority</td>
<td>Enters the system priority that you want for the specified vPC domain. The range of values is from 1 to 65535. The default value is 32667.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> (Optional) switch# show vpc brief</td>
<td>Displays information about each vPC, including information about the vPC peer link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> (Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to configure a vPC peer link:

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vpc domain 5
switch(config-if)# system-priority 4000
Manually Configuring a vPC Peer Switch Role

By default, the Cisco NX-OS software elects a primary and secondary vPC peer switch after you configure the vPC domain and both sides of the vPC peer link. However, you may want to elect a specific vPC peer switch as the primary switch for the vPC. Then, you would manually configure the role value for the vPC peer switch that you want as the primary switch to be lower than the other vPC peer switch.

vPC does not support role preemption. If the primary vPC peer switch fails, the secondary vPC peer switch takes over to become operationally the vPC primary switch. However, the original operational roles are not restored when the formerly primary vPC comes up again.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the vPC feature.

You must configure both switches on either side of the vPC peer link.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong></td>
<td>switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td>switch(config-vpc-domain)# role priority priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch# show vpc brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to configure a vPC peer link:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vpc domain 5
switch(config-if)# role priority 4000
```
Configuring the vPC Peer Switch

Configuring a Pure vPC Peer Switch Topology

You can configure a pure vPC peer switch topology using the **peer-switch** command and then you set the best possible (lowest) spanning tree bridge priority value.

**Note**
The values you apply for the spanning tree priority must be identical on both vPC peers.

**Before you begin**
Ensure that you have enabled the vPC feature.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</td>
<td>Enters the vPC domain number that you want to configure. The system enters the vpc-domain configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config-vpc-domain)# peer-switch</td>
<td>Enables the vPC switch pair to appear as a single STP root in the Layer 2 topology. Use the no form of the command to disable the peer switch vPC topology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switch(config-vpc-domain)# spanning-tree vlan vlan-range priority value</td>
<td>Configures the bridge priority of the VLAN. Valid values are multiples of 4096. The default value is 32768. <strong>Note</strong> This value must be identical on both vPC peers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> switch(config-external)# exit</td>
<td>Exits the vpc-domain configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> (Optional) switch(config)# show spanning-tree summary</td>
<td>Displays a summary of the spanning tree port states including the vPC peer switch. Look for the following line in the command output: <strong>vPC peer-switch is enabled (operational)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> (Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example

This example shows how to configure a pure vPC peer switch topology:

```
switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# vpc domain 5
switch(config-vpc-domain)# peer-switch
2010 Apr 28 14:44:44 switch %STP-2-VPC_PEERSWITCH_CONFIG_ENABLED: vPC peer-switch configuration is enabled. Please make sure to configure spanning tree "bridge" priority as per recommended guidelines to make vPC peer-switch operational.
switch(config-vpc-domain)# exit
switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan 1 priority 8192
switch(config)# show spanning-tree summary
Switch is in rapid-pvst mode
Root bridge for: VLAN0001-VLAN0050, VLAN0100-VLAN0149, VLAN0200-VLAN0249
VLAN0300-VLAN0349, VLAN0400-VLAN0599, VLAN0900-VLAN0999
Port Type Default is disable
Edge Port [PortFast] BPDU Guard Default is disabled
Edge Port [PortFast] BPDU Filter Default is disabled
Bridge Assurance is enabled
Loopguard Default is disabled
Pathcost method used is short
vPC peer-switch is enabled (operational)
Name Blocking Listening Learning Forwarding STP Active
---------------------- -------- --------- -------- ---------- ----------
VLAN0001 0 0 0 16 16
VLAN0002 0 0 0 16 16
```

```
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Configuring a Hybrid vPC Peer Switch Topology

You can configure a hybrid vPC and non-vPC peer switch topology by using the spanning-tree pseudo-information command to change the designated bridge ID so that it meets the STP VLAN-based load-balancing criteria and then change the root bridge ID priority to a value that is better than the best bridge priority. You then enable the peer switch. For more information, see the command reference for your device.

### Note

If you previously configured global spanning tree parameters and you subsequently configure spanning tree pseudo information parameters, be aware that the pseudo information parameters take precedence over the global parameters.

### Before you begin

Ensure that you have enabled the vPC feature.

### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong></td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command or Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th><code>switch(config)# spanning-tree pseudo-information</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configures the spanning tree pseudo information.</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> This configuration takes precedence over any global spanning tree configurations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 3</th>
<th><code>switch(config-pseudo)# vlan vlan-id designated priority priority</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configures the designated bridge priority of the VLAN. Valid values are multiples of 4096 from 0 to 61440.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 4</th>
<th><code>switch(config-pseudo)# vlan vlan-id root priority priority</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configures the root bridge priority of the VLAN. Valid values are multiples of 4096 from 0 to 61440.</td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> This value must be identical on both vPC peers to have an operational peer switch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 5</th>
<th><code>switch(config-pseudo)# exit</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exists spanning tree pseudo information configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 6</th>
<th><code>switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enters the vPC domain number that you want to configure. The system enters the vpc-domain configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 7</th>
<th><code>switch(config-vpc-domain)# peer-switch</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enables the vPC switch pair to appear as a single STP root in the Layer 2 topology. Use the <code>no</code> form of the command to disable the peer switch vPC topology.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 8</th>
<th><code>switch(config-vpc-domain)# exit</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exits the vpc-domain configuration mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 9</th>
<th>(Optional) <code>switch(config)# show spanning-tree summary</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Displays a summary of the spanning tree port states including the vPC peer switch. Look for the following line in the command output:</td>
<td><strong>vPC peer-switch is enabled (operational)</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 10</th>
<th>(Optional) <code>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</code></th>
<th><strong>Purpose</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

This example shows how to configure a hybrid vPC peer switch topology:

```
switch# configure terminal
```
Configuring Layer 3 over vPC

Before you begin

- Ensure that the peer-gateway feature is enabled and configured on both the vPC peers.
- Ensure that both the peers are running an image that supports the Layer 3 over vPC feature.
- Ensure that the mac move notify enabled flag is set to 1 on both the vPC peers. To view the flag status, use the show platform fwm info global | grep "mac move" command in Privilege Exec mode.

On Cisco Nexus devices with Cisco NX-OS Release 7.3.(0)N1(1) and 7.3.(1)N1(1), if the mac move notify enabled flag is set to 0, then use the no debug platform fwm mac_move_notify_disable command to set the flag to 1.

Procedure

Step 1  Enter global configuration mode:
        switch# configure terminal

Step 2  Enter the vpc-domain configuration mode for an existing vpc domain:
        switch(config)# vpc domain domain_id

Step 3  Enable peer gateway on both the vPC peers:
        switch(config-vpc-domain)# peer-gateway

Step 4  Enable the Layer 3 peer-router on both the vPC peers, to form peering adjacency with both the peers:
        switch(config-vpc-domain)# layer3 peer-router

        Note  If you enable the layer 3 peer-router without enabling the peer-gateway feature, the following syslog message is displayed:

            "Please enable peer-gateway before configuring this feature."

Step 5  Exit the vpc-domain configuration mode:
        switch(config-vpc-domain)# end

Step 6  (Optional) Verify the configuration by displaying brief information about each vPC domain:
switch# show vpc brief

Example

This example shows how to configure Layer 3 over vPC:

```bash
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vpc domain 5
switch(config-vpc-domain)# peer-gateway
switch(config-vpc-domain)# layer3 peer-router
switch(config-vpc-domain)# end
```

This example shows how to verify if the Layer 3 over vPC feature is configured:

```bash
switch# show vpc brief
vPC domain id : 1
Peer status : peer adjacency formed ok
vPC keep-alive status : peer is alive
Configuration consistency status : success
Per-vlan consistency status : failed
Type-2 consistency status : success
vPC role : secondary
Number of vPCs configured : 2
Peer Gateway : Enabled
Peer gateway excluded VLANs : -
  Dual-active excluded VLANs : -
Graceful Consistency Check : Enabled
Auto-recovery status : Enabled (timeout = 240 seconds)
Operational Layer3 Peer : Enabled
```

Isolating and Restoring a Switch from the vPC Complex

Configuring vPC Shutdown

Isolates a switch from the vPC complex. Once the switch is isolated, the switch can be debugged, reloaded, or even removed physically, without affecting the vPC traffic going through the non-isolated switch.

**Note**

When vPC switches are isolated, configuration changes are not allowed on both the isolated and non-isolated switches.

Only a disruptive upgrade is supported on an isolated switch.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</td>
<td>Creates a vPC domain on the switch and enters the vpc-domain configuration mode. There is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Virtual Port Channels

#### Restoring a vPC Shutdown Switch

Restores an isolated switch back into the vPC complex with minimal disruption.

**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 1</strong> switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 2</strong> switch(config)# vpc domain domain-id</td>
<td>Creates a vPC domain on the switch and enters the vpc-domain configuration mode. There is no default domain-id. The range is from 1 to 1000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong> switch(config-vpc)# no shutdown</td>
<td>Restores the switch to the vPC domain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong> switch(config-vpc)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the running configuration to the startup configuration file so that all current configuration details are available after a reboot.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

This example shows how to restore traffic on vPC domain 100.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vpc domain 100
switch(config)# no shutdown
switch(config-vpc)# copy running-config startup-config
```

### Example

This example shows how to shutdown traffic on vPC domain 100.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vpc domain 100
switch(config-vpc)# shutdown
switch(config-vpc)# copy running-config startup-config
```
Verifying the vPC Configuration

Use the following commands to display vPC configuration information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch# show feature</td>
<td>Displays whether vPC is enabled or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show port-channel capacity</td>
<td>Displays how many EtherChannels are configured and how many are still available on the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show running-config vpc</td>
<td>Displays running configuration information for vPCs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show vpc brief</td>
<td>Displays brief information on the vPCs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show vpc consistency-parameters</td>
<td>Displays the status of those parameters that must be consistent across all vPC interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show vpc peer-keepalive</td>
<td>Displays information on the peer-keepalive messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show vpc role</td>
<td>Displays the peer status, the role of the local switch, the vPC system MAC address and system priority, and the MAC address and priority for the local vPC switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch# show vpc statistics</td>
<td>Displays statistics on the vPCs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> This command displays the vPC statistics only for the vPC peer device that you are working on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For information about the switch output, see the Command Reference for your Cisco Nexus Series switch.

Viewing the Graceful Type-1 Check Status

This example shows how to display the current status of the graceful Type-1 consistency check:

```bash
switch# show vpc brief
Legend:
(*) - local vPC is down, forwarding via vPC peer-link

vPC domain id : 10
Peer status : peer adjacency formed ok
vPC keep-alive status : peer is alive
Configuration consistency status: success
Per-vlan consistency status : success
Type-2 consistency status : success
vPC role : secondary
Number of vPCs configured : 34
Peer Gateway : Disabled
Dual-active excluded VLANs : -
Graceful Consistency Check : Enabled

vPC Peer-link status
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------
id  Port   Status  Active vlans
--- --- ------ ---------------
1   Po1    up    1
```
Viewing a Global Type-1 Inconsistency

When a global Type-1 inconsistency occurs, the vPCs on the secondary switch are brought down. The following example shows this type of inconsistency when there is a spanning-tree mode mismatch.

The example shows how to display the status of the suspended vPC VLANs on the secondary switch:

```
switch(config)# show vpc
Legend:
(*) - local vPC is down, forwarding via vPC peer-link

vPC domain id : 10
Peer status : peer adjacency formed ok
vPC keep-alive status : peer is alive
Configuration consistency status: failed
Per-vlan consistency status : success
Configuration consistency reason: vPC type-1 configuration incompatible - STP Mode inconsistent
Type-2 consistency status : success
vPC role : secondary
Number of vPCs configured : 2
Peer Gateway : Disabled
Dual-active excluded VLANs : -
Graceful Consistency Check : Enabled

vPC Peer-link status

id  Port  Status  Active vlans
--  ----  ------  ---------------
 1  Po1    up     1-10

vPC status

id  Port  Status  Consistency Reason  Active vlans
------  ----  ------  --------------------------  -----------
 20  Po20  down*  failed  Global compat check failed -
 30  Po30  down*  failed  Global compat check failed -
```

The example shows how to display the inconsistent status (the VLANs on the primary vPC are not suspended) on the primary switch:

```
switch(config)# show vpc
Legend:
(*) - local vPC is down, forwarding via vPC peer-link

vPC domain id : 10
Peer status : peer adjacency formed ok
vPC keep-alive status : peer is alive
Configuration consistency status: failed
Per-vlan consistency status : success
Configuration consistency reason: vPC type-1 configuration incompatible - STP Mode inconsistent
Type-2 consistency status : success
vPC role : primary
Number of vPCs configured : 2
Peer Gateway : Disabled
Dual-active excluded VLANs : -
Graceful Consistency Check : Enabled

vPC Peer-link status

id  Port  Status  Active vlans
--  ----  ------  ---------------
```
Viewing an Interface-Specific Type-1 Inconsistency

When an interface-specific Type-1 inconsistency occurs, the vPC port on the secondary switch is brought down while the primary switch vPC ports remain up. The following example shows this type of inconsistency when there is a switchport mode mismatch.

This example shows how to display the status of the suspended vPC VLAN on the secondary switch:

```
switch(config-if)# show vpc brief
Legend:
(*) - local vPC is down, forwarding via vPC peer-link

vPC domain id : 10
Peer status : peer adjacency formed ok
vPC keep-alive status : peer is alive
Configuration consistency status : success
Per-vlan consistency status : success
Type-2 consistency status : success
vPC role : secondary
Number of vPCs configured : 2
Peer Gateway : Disabled
Dual-active excluded VLANs : -
Graceful Consistency Check : Enabled
```

This example shows how to display the inconsistent status (the VLANs on the primary vPC are not suspended) on the primary switch:

```
switch(config-if)# show vpc brief
Legend:
(*) - local vPC is down, forwarding via vPC peer-link

vPC domain id : 10
Peer status : peer adjacency formed ok
vPC keep-alive status : peer is alive
Configuration consistency status : success
Per-vlan consistency status : success
Type-2 consistency status : success
```

Cisco Nexus 6000 Series NX-OS Interfaces Configuration Guide, Release 6.x
vPC role: primary  
Number of vPCs configured: 2  
Peer Gateway: Disabled  
Dual-active excluded VLANs: -  
Graceful Consistency Check: Enabled

vPC Peer-link status
---------------------------------------------------------------------
id  Port  Status  Active vlans
--- ---- ------ --------------------------------- 
1   Po1  up     1

vPC status
---------------------------------------------------------------------
id  Port  Status  Consistency  Reason  Active vlans
----- ---- ------- ----------- ----------- -------------------------- ----------- 
20  Po20  up  success  success  1
30  Po30  up  failed  Compatibility check failed 1 for port mode

**Viewing a Per-VLAN Consistency Status**

To view the per-VLAN consistency or inconsistency status, enter the `show vpc consistency-parameters vlans` command.

**Example**

This example shows how to display the consistent status of the VLANs on the primary and the secondary switches.

```
switch(config-if)# show vpc brief
Legend:
(*) - local vPC is down, forwarding via vPC peer-link
```

vPC domain id: 10  
Peer status: peer adjacency formed ok  
vPC keep-alive status: peer is alive  
Configuration consistency status: success  
Per-vlan consistency status: success  
Type-2 consistency status: success  
vPC role: secondary  
Number of vPCs configured: 2  
Peer Gateway: Disabled  
Dual-active excluded VLANs: -  
Graceful Consistency Check: Enabled

vPC Peer-link status
---------------------------------------------------------------------
id  Port  Status  Active vlans
--- ---- ------ --------------------------------- 
1   Po1  up     1-10

vPC status
---------------------------------------------------------------------
id  Port  Status  Consistency  Reason  Active vlans
----- ---- ------- ----------- ----------- -------------------------- ----------- 
20  Po20  up  success  success  1-10
30  Po30  up  success  success  1-10
Entering `no spanning-tree vlan 5` command triggers the inconsistency on the primary and secondary VLANs:

```
switch(config)# no spanning-tree vlan 5
```

This example shows how to display the per-VLAN consistency status as Failed on the secondary switch:

```
switch(config)# show vpc brief
Legend:
    (*) - local vPC is down, forwarding via vPC peer-link

vPC domain id : 10
Peer status : peer adjacency formed ok
vPC keep-alive status : peer is alive
Configuration consistency status: success
Per-vlan consistency status : failed
Type-2 consistency status : success
vPC role : secondary
Number of vPCs configured : 2
Peer Gateway : Disabled
Dual-active excluded VLANs : -
Graceful Consistency Check : Enabled

vPC Peer-link status
---------------------------------------------------------------
id  Port  Status  Active vlans
---  ----  ------  -----------------------------------------------
  1   Po1  up     1-4,6-10

vPC status
---------------------------------------------------------------
id  Port  Status  Consistency Reason  Active vlans
-----  ------  -----------  --------------------------  -----------
  20  Po20  up     success  success  1-4,6-10
  30  Po30  up     success  success  1-4,6-10
```

This example shows how to display the per-VLAN consistency status as Failed on the primary switch:

```
switch(config)# show vpc brief
Legend:
    (*) - local vPC is down, forwarding via vPC peer-link

vPC domain id : 10
Peer status : peer adjacency formed ok
vPC keep-alive status : peer is alive
Configuration consistency status: success
Per-vlan consistency status : failed
Type-2 consistency status : success
vPC role : primary
Number of vPCs configured : 2
Peer Gateway : Disabled
Dual-active excluded VLANs : -
Graceful Consistency Check : Enabled

vPC Peer-link status
---------------------------------------------------------------
id  Port  Status  Active vlans
---  ----  ------  -----------------------------------------------
  1   Po1  up     1-4,6-10

vPC status
---------------------------------------------------------------
id  Port  Status  Consistency Reason  Active vlans
-----  ------  -----------  --------------------------  -----------
```
This example shows the inconsistency as STP Disabled:

```
switch(config)# show vpc consistency-parameters vlans
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Reason</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Pass Vlans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STP Mode</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>success</td>
<td>0-4095</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP Disabled</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>vPC type-1</td>
<td>0-4,6-4095</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configuration</td>
<td></td>
<td>incompatible</td>
<td>STP is</td>
<td>some or all vlans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configuration</td>
<td></td>
<td>incompatible</td>
<td>STP is</td>
<td>enabled or disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configuration</td>
<td></td>
<td>incompatible</td>
<td>STP is</td>
<td>enabled or disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLAN Mapping</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>success</td>
<td>0-4095</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP Loopguard</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>success</td>
<td>0-4095</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP Bridge Assurance</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>success</td>
<td>0-4095</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP Port Type, Edge</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>success</td>
<td>0-4095</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPDUFilter, Edge BPDUGuard</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STP MST Simulate PVST</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>success</td>
<td>0-4095</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass Vlans</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>0-4,6-4095</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Viewing Dual Active Detection Status

When MCT (Multichassis EtherChannel Trunk) is down and keepalive is up, dual active situation arises. The dual active detection status is set to 1 on operational secondary device.

This example displays dual active detection status on operational secondary device:

```
switch# show vpc role
vPC Role status
ringe, operational secondary
Dual Active Detection Status : 1
vPC system-mac : 00:23:04:ee:be:01
vPC system-priority : 32667
vPC local system-mac : 8c:60:4f:17:e6:41
vPC local role-priority : 3000
Leaf-ACC-4#
```

This example displays the dual active detection status on operational primary device:

```
switch# show vpc role
vPC Role status
ringe, operational primary
Dual Active Detection Status : 0
vPC system-mac : 00:23:04:ee:be:01
vPC system-priority : 32667
vPC local system-mac : 8c:60:4f:17:e5:fc
vPC local role-priority : 4000
```
vPC Example Configurations

Dual Homed Fabric Extender vPC Configuration Example

The following example shows how to configure the dual homed Fabric Extender vPC topology using the management VRF to carry the peer-keepalive messages on switch CiscoNexus-1 as shown in following figure:

Figure 26: vPC Configuration Example

Before you begin

Ensure that the Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender NX-2000-100 is attached and online.

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Enable vPC and LACP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1# configure terminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1(config)# feature lacp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1(config)# feature vpc</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Create the vPC domain and add the vPC peer-keepalive link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1(config)# vpc domain 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1(config-vpc-domain)# peer-keepalive destination 10.10.10.237</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1(config-vpc-domain)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>Configure the vPC peer link as a two port Etherchannel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1(config)# interface ethernet 1/1-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1(config-if-range)# switchport mode trunk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1(config-if-range)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 20-50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1(config-if-range)# switchport trunk native vlan 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1(config-if-range)# channel-group 20 mode active</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CiscoNexus-1(config-if-range)# exit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Step 4 Create a Fabric Extender identifier (for example, "100").
CiscoNexus-1(config)# fex 100
CiscoNexus-1(config-fex)# pinning max-links 1
CiscoNexus-1(fex)# exit

Step 5 Configure the fabric EtherChannel links for the Fabric Extender 100.
CiscoNexus-1(config)# interface ethernet 1/20
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# channel-group 100
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# exit
CiscoNexus-1(config)# interface port-channel 100
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# vpc 100
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# fex associate 100
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# exit

Step 6 Configure each host interface port on the Fabric Extender 100 on both Cisco Nexus devices as for all the other
steps.
CiscoNexus-1(config)# interface ethernet 100/1/1-48
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# switchport mode access
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# switchport access vlan 50
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# no shutdown
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# exit

Step 7 Save the configuration.
CiscoNexus-1(config)# copy running-config startup-config

Repeat all the above steps for the CiscoNexus-2 switch.

---

**Single Homed Fabric Extender vPC Configuration Example**

The following example shows how to configure the single homed Fabric Extender vPC topology using the
default VRF to carry the peer-keepalive messages on switch CiscoNexus-1 as shown in following figure:
The following example only shows the configuration of CiscoNexus-1 which is connected to the Fabric Extender NX-2000-100. You must repeat these steps on its vPC peer, CiscoNexus-2, which is connected to the Fabric Extender NX-2000-101.

Before you begin

Ensure that the Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extenders NX-2000-100 and NX-2000-101 are attached and online.

Procedure

Step 1 Enable vPC and LACP.

CiscoNexus-1# configure terminal
CiscoNexus-1(config)# feature lacp
CiscoNexus-1(config)# feature vpc

Step 2 Enable SVI interfaces, create the VLAN and SVI to be used by the vPC peer-keepalive link.

CiscoNexus-1(config)# feature interface-vlan
CiscoNexus-1(config)# vlan 900
CiscoNexus-1(config-vlan)# int vlan 900
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# ip address 10.10.10.236 255.255.255.0
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# no shutdown
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# exit

Step 3 Create the vPC domain and add the vPC peer-keepalive link in the default VRF.
CiscoNexus-1(config)# vpc domain 30
CiscoNexus-1(config-vpc-domain)# peer-keepalive destination 10.10.10.237 source 10.10.10.236
CiscoNexus-1(config-vpc-domain)# vrf default
CiscoNexus-1(config-vpc-domain)# exit

**Note**  VLAN 900 must not be trunked across the vPC peer-link because it carries the vPC peer-keepalive messages. There must be an alternative path between switches CiscoNexus-1 and CiscoNexus-2 for the vPC peer-keepalive messages.

**Step 4**  Configure the vPC peer link as a two port Etherchannel.
CiscoNexus-1(config)# interface ethernet 1/1-2
CiscoNexus-1(config-if-range)# switchport mode trunk
CiscoNexus-1(config-if-range)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 20-50
CiscoNexus-1(config-if-range)# switchport trunk native vlan 20
CiscoNexus-1(config-if-range)# channel-group 30 mode active
CiscoNexus-1(config-if-range)# exit
CiscoNexus-1(config)# interface port-channel 30
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# vpc peer-link
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# exit

**Step 5**  Configure the Fabric Extender NX-2000-100.
CiscoNexus-1(config)# fex 100
CiscoNexus-1(config-fex)# pinning max-links 1
CiscoNexus-1(fex)# exit

**Step 6**  Configure the fabric EtherChannel links for the Fabric Extender NX-2000-100.
CiscoNexus-1(config)# interface ethernet 1/20-21
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# channel-group 100
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# exit
CiscoNexus-1(config)# interface port-channel 100
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# fex associate 100
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# exit

**Step 7**  Configure a vPC server port on on the Fabric Extender NX-2000-100.
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# interface ethernet 100/1/1
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan 100
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 100-105
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# channel-group 600
CiscoNexus-1(config-if)# no shutdown
Step 8  Save the configuration.

CiscoNexus-1(config)# copy running-config startup-config

---

vPC Default Settings

The following table lists the default settings for vPC parameters.

*Table 9: Default vPC Parameters*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vPC system priority</td>
<td>32667</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vPC peer-keepalive message</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vPC peer-keepalive interval</td>
<td>1 second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vPC peer-keepalive timeout</td>
<td>5 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vPC peer-keepalive UDP port</td>
<td>3200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 9

Configuring Linecard Expansion Modules

This chapter contains the following sections:

• Configuring Linecard Expansion Modules, on page 187

Configuring Linecard Expansion Modules

Information About Linecard Expansion Modules

The Linecard Expansion Module (LEM) is a field replaceable module. Each LEM has 12 to 40 Gigabit Ethernet ports that can break out into 48 to 10 Gigabit ports per LEM. The module can be either in 10 Gigabit Ethernet mode or in 40 Gigabit Ethernet mode. A power-off followed by a power-on of the module is required to change the mode. The LEM occupies slot 1 to slot 8 on the Cisco Nexus 6004 chassis.

The Cisco Nexus 6004 chassis supports the following types of LEMs:

• Fixed LEMs: Slot 1 to Slot 4.
• Hot-swappable LEMs: Slot 5 to Slot 8.

Configuring the LEM in 10G Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# interface breakout slot slot port port-range map 10g-4x</td>
<td>Configures the breakout for an interface. slot—valid slot values are from 1 to 8. port-range—valid port-range values are from 1 to 12.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configuring Linecard Expansion Modules

#### Configuring the LEM in 40G Mode

##### Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# no interface breakout slot slot port port-range map 10g-4x</td>
<td>Configures the breakout for an interface. <em>slot</em>—valid values are 1 to 8. <em>port</em>—valid values are 1 to 12.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

#### Configuring the LEM in 10G Mode

##### Purpose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 3</strong></td>
<td><strong>Required: switch(config)# poweroff module module-number</strong>&lt;br&gt;<strong>Note</strong> You have to select either all the QSFP ports on a given line expansion module (LEM) card or all QSFP ports on a single ASIC of a LEM for breakout. You cannot create breakout group by mixing QSFP ports from different ASICs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 4</strong></td>
<td><strong>Required: switch(config)# no poweroff module module-number</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong></td>
<td><strong>Required: switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

#### Example

This example shows how to configure a Linecard Expansion Module (LEM) in 10G mode.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface breakout slot 1 port 1-12 map 10g-4x
switch(config)# poweroff module 1
switch(config)# no poweroff module 1
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```
Configuring Linecard Expansion Modules

Selecting the Fabric Mode

Example

This example shows how to configure a Linecard Expansion Module (LEM) in 40G mode.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no interface breakout slot 1 port 1-12 map 10g-4x
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Selecting the Fabric Mode

Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Command or Action</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>switch# configure terminal</td>
<td>Enters global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>switch(config)# fabric-mode {10g</td>
<td>40g}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10g—Runs the cross bar in 10G mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40g—Runs the cross bar in 40G mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</td>
<td>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

This example shows how to select a fabric mode of 10G.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# fabric-mode 10g
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

This example shows how to select a fabric mode of 40G.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# fabric-mode 40g
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

What to do next

When changing the fabric mode, the system must be rebooted for the new mode to take effect.

Verifying the LEM Mode Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show interface eth1/2 capabilities</td>
<td>Displays information about the interface configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show interface brief</td>
<td>Displays a brief summary of the interface configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>